



Trimble® Precision-IQ™ Application

Version 3.0
Revision A
September 2015

Corporate Office

Trimble Navigation Limited
935 Stewart Drive
Sunnyvale, CA 94085
USA
www.trimble.com

Heavy Highway business area

10368 Westmoor Drive
Westminster, Colorado 80021
USA
800-361-1249 (toll free in USA)
+1-937-245-5154 Phone
+1-937-233-9441 Fax
www.trimble.com
Email: trimble_support@trimble.com

Copyright and Trademarks

© 2015 Trimble Navigation Limited. All rights reserved.
Trimble, the Globe & Triangle logo, EZ-Boom, EZ-Guide, EZ-Pilot, EZ-Steer, FarmWorks Software, FmX, GreenSeeker, OmniSTAR, Trimble Ready, Tru Count Air Clutch, and WM-Drain are trademarks of Trimble Navigation Limited, registered in the United States and in other countries.
Autopilot, AutoSense, CenterPoint, CFX-750, Connected Farm, EZ-Remote, Farm Works, Farm Works Mapping, Farm Works Software, Field-IQ, FieldLevel, FM-750, FM-1000, FreeForm, LiquiBlock, Rawson, RTX, T3, TMX-2050, TrueGuide, TrueTracker, VRS Now, VRS, WM-Topo, XCN-2050, xFill, and Zephyr are trademarks of Trimble Navigation Limited.
For STL support, the software uses the Moscow Center for SPARC Technology adaptation of the SGI Standard Template Library. Copyright © 1994 Hewlett-Packard Company, Copyright © 1996, 97 Silicon Graphics Computer Systems, Inc., Copyright © 1997 Moscow Center for SPARC Technology.
Portions Copyright © 2009 Nokia Corporation and/or its subsidiary(-ies).
Portions Copyright © 2003, Bitstream Inc.
All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Release Notice

This is the September 2015 release (Revision A) of the Precision-IQ field application documentation. It applies to version 3.0 of the display software.

Legal Notices

The following limited warranties give you specific legal rights. You may have others, which vary from state/jurisdiction to state/jurisdiction.

Product Limited Warranty

Trimble warrants that this Trimble product and its internal components (the "Product") shall be free from defects in materials and workmanship and will substantially conform to Trimble's applicable published specifications for the Product for a period of one (1) year, starting from the earlier of (i) the date of installation, or (ii) six (6) months from the date of original Product shipment from Trimble. This warranty applies only to the Product if installed by Trimble or a dealer authorized by Trimble to perform Product installation services.

Software Components

All Product software components (sometimes hereinafter also referred to as "Software") are licensed solely for use as an integral part of the Product and are not sold. Any software accompanied by a separate end user license agreement ("EULA") shall be governed by the terms, conditions, restrictions and limited warranty terms of such EULA notwithstanding the preceding paragraph.
During the limited warranty period you will be entitled to receive such Fixes to the Product software that Trimble releases and makes commercially available and for which it does not charge separately, subject to the procedures for delivery to purchasers of Trimble products generally. If you have purchased the Product from an authorized Trimble dealer rather than from Trimble directly, Trimble may, at its option, forward the software Fix to the Trimble dealer for final distribution to you. Minor Updates, Major Upgrades, new products, or substantially new software releases, as identified by Trimble, are expressly excluded from this update process and limited warranty.

Receipt of software Fixes or other enhancements shall not serve to extend the limited warranty period.

For purposes of this warranty the following definitions shall apply: (1) "Fix(es)" means an error correction or other update created to fix a previous software version that does not substantially conform to its Trimble specifications; (2) "Minor Update" occurs when enhancements are made to current features in a software program; and (3) "Major Upgrade" occurs when significant new features are added to software, or when a new product containing new features replaces the further development of a current product line. Trimble reserves the right to determine, in its sole discretion, what constitutes a Fix, Minor Update, or Major Upgrade.

Gson components licensed under the Apache 2.0 License. The source is available from <http://code.google.com/p/google-gson/>. Google MVEL components licensed under the Apache 2.0 License. The source is available from <http://code.google.com/p/mvel.codehaus.org>. Google Guava components listed under the Apache 2.0 License. The source is available from <http://code.google.com/p/guava-libraries>. MapQuest content licensed under the Open Data Commons Database License (DbCL). The source is available from <http://developer.mapquest.com>.
APACHE LICENSE (Version 2.0, January 2004)

<http://www.apache.org/licenses/>
TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE,
REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

1. Definitions

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through Section 9 of this document.
"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).

"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.

3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:

You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and

You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and

You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and

If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.

6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.

7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.

8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

LWGL LICENSE

ODC DATABASE CONTENTS LICENSE

SGI FREE SOFTWARE LICENSE B (Version 2.0, Sept. 18, 2008)

Copyright © 2013 Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to

<http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/> shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

MAPQUEST PLATFORM TERMS OF USE (Last Updated: November 1, 2011)

Community Edition License Agreement

INTRODUCTION. MapQuest has been helping people find places and get maps and directions for over 40 years. We make the MapQuest APIs, our Open Services (as described at

<http://open.mapquestapi.com/>), Community Accounts and other developer services (in short, the "MapQuest Services"), along with the maps, driving directions and other content delivered through the MapQuest Services (the "MapQuest Content"), available without charge to encourage developers to use these services and content in developing their applications and websites. We want you to be creative and build awesome applications and websites that thrill your users. All we ask is that you comply with the terms that are included in these Terms of Use.

We will provide the developer community at-large with support in various forms, such as forums, blog posts or FAQs. Since we're providing the MapQuest Services for free, we don't provide individual technical support or warranties for the Community Services, but if you want to receive technical support and warranties, we have a product for you. Please check out our MapQuest Platform Services Enterprise Edition and learn more about the services we will provide for reasonable fees.

If you choose to use any of the MapQuest Services or if you set up a Community Account, you are agreeing to abide by these Terms of Use and are forming an agreement between yourself and MapQuest, Inc. ("MapQuest"). If you do not want to abide by these Terms of Use, then don't use the MapQuest Services.

LICENSES FROM MAPQUEST TO YOU.

2.1. MapQuest Services License. MapQuest grants you a non-exclusive, non-assignable, non-sublicensable, revocable limited license to use the MapQuest Services during the Term of these Terms of Use as provided by MapQuest in the manner permitted in these Terms of Use.

2.2. MapQuest Content License. MapQuest grants you a non-exclusive, non-assignable, non-sublicensable, revocable limited license access, use, publicly perform and publicly display the MapQuest Content as the MapQuest Content is provided through the MapQuest Services and in the manner permitted by these Terms of Use.

GENERAL RESTRICTIONS, ADDITIONAL LEGAL NOTICE, RESERVATION OF RIGHTS.

3.1. Restrictions. Except as expressly authorized by MapQuest, You must not:

decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, or otherwise attempt to derive any source code from the MapQuest Services or MapQuest Content, other than the Open Services;

interfere or disrupt MapQuest servers or networks, or disobey any network access or security requirements, policies, procedures or regulations of MapQuest (including the enabling of any viruses, Trojan horses, trap doors, back doors, worms, time bombs, cancelbots, adware, spyware or other computer programming routines designed or intended to damage, detrimentally interfere with, surreptitiously intercept or expropriate any system, data or personal information);

use the MapQuest Services as a means to engage in conduct that reflects poorly upon, disparages or devalues MapQuest's reputation or goodwill, as determined in MapQuest's sole discretion;

use the MapQuest Services, other than the Open Services, in conjunction with any commercial application not publicly available without charge (other than mobile applications for which users pay a fee to download/install the application). If your application does not fit this criteria and you would like to discuss additional options for using the MapQuest Services please contact info@mapquest.com;

use the MapQuest Services, other than the Open Services, to process or generate data for any third party (other than for end users as expressly permitted hereunder);

use the MapQuest Services with any content or product that falsely expresses or implies that such content or product is sponsored or endorsed by MapQuest;

use the MapQuest Services in conjunction with a site or application which contains or displays adult content or promotes illegal activities, gambling, or the sale of tobacco or alcohol to persons under twenty-one (21) years of age;

3.2. Additional Legal Requirements. In addition to the restrictions set forth in Section 3.1, your use of the MapQuest Services and MapQuest Content is subject to the Additional Legal Requirements which are incorporated and made a part of these Terms of Use. Please read the Additional Legal Requirements carefully as they include usage limits and additional restrictions that may impact your plans for development.

3.3. Reservation of Rights. MapQuest reserves all rights not expressly granted in these Terms of Use and you may not use the MapQuest Services or MapQuest Content in any manner not expressly authorized in these Terms of Use.

LICENSE FROM YOU TO MAPQUEST. If you upload any data, feedback, ideas, suggestions, content, points of interest (including any points of interest that include Trademarks) or other material to MapQuest (collectively "Your Content"), you hereby grant MapQuest a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, royalty-free license to access, archive, reproduce, publicly display, translate, modify the format or the display of, distribute, transmit, stream, cache, overlay, seam, perform, sublicense, and otherwise use Your Content with or without attribution and without financial obligation, in whole or in part, via any method for any purpose. MapQuest makes no assertion of ownership over Your Content, and you retain all intellectual property rights to Your Content, subject to the license you grant to MapQuest above.

MODIFICATIONS TO THESE TERMS OF USE AND THE SERVICES. MapQuest reserves the right to change or modify these Terms of Use, the MapQuest Services and/or the MapQuest Content. Please check these Terms of Use, including the Additional Legal Requirements periodically for changes. Your continued use of the MapQuest Services or MapQuest Content following the posting of any changes to the Terms of Use constitutes acceptance of those changes.

TERMINATION. MapQuest may terminate these Terms of Use and/or the provision of the MapQuest Services or MapQuest Content at any time, for any reason, with or without notice.

PRIVACY POLICY AND END USER TERMS.

7.1. Privacy Policy. MapQuest's collection and use of personally identifiable information is governed by the AOL Network Privacy Policy, available at http://about.aol.com/aolnetwork/aol_pp.

7.2. End User Terms. End users shall only be entitled to use the MapQuest Services and MapQuest Content if they accept the then current end user Terms of Use located at <http://info.mapquest.com/terms-of-use/>. MapQuest reserves the right to amend and/or replace these terms and the form and manner of presentation. You must provide a hypertext link at the bottom of each page in your website or application where the MapQuest Services or MapQuest Content can be viewed or accessed, or within the terms of use of your application or website, to the end user terms of use.

ACCESS AND USAGE DATA.

8.1. Credentials. MapQuest, at its discretion, may require you to create an account and obtain an access key and other related credentials (collectively "Credentials") to use the MapQuest Services or certain aspects of the MapQuest Services. You are responsible for maintaining the confidentiality of your Credentials and for any usage or abuse of the MapQuest Services or MapQuest Content by anyone using your Credentials.

8.2. Usage Data. MapQuest's servers record information when you visit MapQuest websites or when applications and/or Credentials call or invoke the MapQuest Services. This information may include, without limitation, the URL, IP address, browser type, Credential and access times and dates. MapQuest may use this information to promote, operate, and improve MapQuest services, products and properties.

PROPRIETARY RIGHTS. You acknowledge and agree the MapQuest Services and MapQuest Content are works for purposes of copyright law, and embody valuable, confidential, trade secret information of

MapQuest, the development of which required the expenditure of substantial time and money. As between MapQuest and You, MapQuest retains exclusive ownership of any and all rights, title and interest (including all intellectual property rights) in the MapQuest Services and MapQuest Content, and you shall not acquire any rights, express or implied, in the foregoing by virtue of these Terms of Use other than otherwise expressly set forth. For purposes of these Terms of Use, the term "Trademarks" means all trademarks, trade names, service marks, logos, domain names, along with any other distinctive brand features of MapQuest or its suppliers. All use by You of Trademarks shall inure to the benefit of MapQuest. Further, You shall not (a) display a Trademark as the most prominent element on any page of Your website, application or paper map; (b) display a Trademark in a manner that is misleading, defamatory, infringing, libelous, disparaging, obscene or otherwise objectionable to MapQuest as determined by MapQuest in its sole discretion; or (c) remove, distort or alter any element of a Trademark.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES. THE MAPQUEST SERVICES AND MAPQUEST CONTENT ARE PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS. MAPQUEST DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. MAPQUEST DOES NOT REPRESENT OR WARRANT THAT THE MAPQUEST SERVICES OR CONTENT, OR ANY PORTION THEREOF, IS OR WILL BE FREE OF DEFECTS OR ERRORS (OR THAT ANY SUCH DEFECTS OR ERRORS WILL BE CORRECTED), VIRUS FREE, ABLE TO OPERATE ON AN UNINTERRUPTED BASIS, MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, OR CAPABLE OF BEING INTEGRATED INTO OR WITH YOUR COMPUTER SYSTEM, APPLICATIONS OR NETWORK. FURTHER, MAPQUEST DOES NOT WARRANT OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS REGARDING THE USE OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF THE MAPQUEST SERVICES, OR ANY PORTION THEREOF, IN TERMS OF ITS CORRECTNESS, ACCURACY, QUALITY, RELIABILITY, OR OTHERWISE. THIS DISCLAIMER CONSTITUTES AN ESSENTIAL PART OF THESE TERMS OF USE. IF THIS EXCLUSION IS HELD UNENFORCEABLE, THEN ALL EXPRESS AND IMPLIED WARRANTIES SHALL BE LIMITED IN DURATION TO A PERIOD OF FIFTEEN (15) DAYS AFTER THE EFFECTIVE DATE, AND NO WARRANTIES SHALL APPLY AFTER THAT PERIOD.

LIMITATION ON LIABILITY. NEITHER MAPQUEST NOR ITS AFFILIATES NOR ANY OF THEIR SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY OTHER THIRD PARTY FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING OUT OF THE POSSESSION OF, ACCESS TO, USE OF, OR INABILITY TO ACCESS OR USE THE MAPQUEST SERVICES OR MAPQUEST CONTENT, OR ANY PORTION, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS, DATA LOSS, COST OF PROCUREMENT FOR SUBSTITUTE GOODS, OR COMPUTER FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, EVEN IF MAPQUEST HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, AND REGARDLESS OF WHETHER THE CLAIM OR LIABILITY IS BASED UPON ANY CONTRACT, TORT, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR OTHER LEGAL OR EQUITABLE THEORY. IN NO EVENT SHALL MAPQUEST'S TOTAL AGGREGATE LIABILITY UNDER THESE TERMS OF USE EXCEED THE LESSER OF (A) THE TOTAL AMOUNT OF FEES PAID BY YOU TO MAPQUEST UNDER THESE TERMS OF USE FOR THE TWELVE (12) MONTHS PRECEDING THE DATE OF THE EVENT GIVING RISE TO SUCH CLAIM; OR (B) FIVE HUNDRED DOLLARS (\$500).

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT THE PARTICIPATION IN AND USE OF THE MAPQUEST SERVICES AND MAPQUEST CONTENT IS DONE AT YOUR OWN RISK AND THAT YOU ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE AND LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGE SUSTAINED TO YOUR COMPUTER SYSTEM, NETWORK OR DATA RESULTING FROM SUCH PARTICIPATION OR USE.

SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF CERTAIN WARRANTIES OR THE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION OF LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.

INDEMNITY. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold MapQuest and its affiliates, and each of their officers, directors, employees, agents, co-branders or other partners (as well as each of their suppliers), successors and permitted assigns ("Indemnified Parties") harmless from and against any third party claim or action, including any liability, cost, losses, damages, expenses, and attorney's fees, arising from or in any way related to Your access, use or participation in the MapQuest Services (including claims related to Your Content and any use of the MapQuest Services with software, data, content, systems, or other technology not provided by MapQuest), any violation of these Terms of Use, or any alleged infringement of a patent, copyright, trademark, trade secret, or other intellectual property right. MapQuest shall use good faith efforts

to provide you with prompt notice of any such claim or action; provided however, you agree that, upon MapQuest's written request, MapQuest shall control the defense or settlement of any such claim or action and you shall provide reasonable cooperation to MapQuest. You may not settle an indemnifiable claim without obtain MapQuest's prior written consent.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS. You agree to comply with all export and import laws and restrictions and regulations of the United States or any foreign agency or authority, and not to export or re-export MapQuest Services or any direct product thereof in violation of any such restrictions, laws or regulations, or without all necessary approvals.

NOTICES AND TRANSACTING ELECTRONICALLY. You understand and agree that MapQuest is an online service and that you are transacting with MapQuest electronically. MapQuest shall provide electronic notices by posting them on this website and/or by sending an email to any account associated with your Credentials.

GENERAL PROVISIONS.

15.1. Entire Agreement. These Terms of Use constitute the entire agreement between MapQuest and You with respect to the subject matter of these Terms of Use, and supersedes all prior agreements, understandings and communications between MapQuest and You with respect to such subject matter. No modification or amendment to these Terms of Use shall be effective unless in writing by MapQuest.

15.2. Choice of Law; Jurisdiction. These Terms of Use are made under and shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the Commonwealth of Virginia (except for its conflicts of laws principles) and specifically excluding f the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods. MapQuest and You expressly agree that exclusive jurisdiction for any claim or dispute relating to or arising out of these Terms of Use resides in the state courts in Loudoun County, Virginia and the federal courts of the Eastern District of Virginia (Alexandria Division) and further agree and expressly consent to the exercise of personal jurisdiction in such state and federal courts of Virginia in connection with any such dispute.

15.3. Severability; Waiver. If any provision in these Terms of Use should be held illegal or unenforceable by a court having jurisdiction, such provision shall be modified to the extent necessary to render it enforceable without losing its intent, or severed from these Terms of Use if no such modification is possible, and other provisions of these Terms of Use shall remain in full force and effect. A waiver by either MapQuest or You (as applicable) of any term or condition of these Terms of Use or any breach thereof, in any one instance, shall not waive such term or condition or any subsequent breach thereof.

15.4. Public Statements. You acknowledge and agree that MapQuest may make any public statements regarding the existence of these Terms of Use or the relationship described herein, without Your consent.

15.5. Survival. Any term or condition of these Terms of Use that by its nature would logically survive termination or expiration of these Terms of Use, including but not limited to protections of proprietary rights, indemnifications, and limitations of liability, shall survive such termination or expiration.

15.6. Independent Contractors. The parties to these Terms of Use are independent contractors. Neither party is an agent, representative or partner of the other party. Neither party shall have any right, power or authority to enter into any agreement for or on behalf of, or incur any obligation or liability of, or otherwise to bind, the other party.

15.7. Equitable Remedies. You acknowledge and agree that monetary damages may be insufficient to compensate MapQuest for an actual or anticipated breach of these Terms of Use by you. You agree that in such circumstances MapQuest shall be entitled to seek equitable remedies (including preliminary and permanent injunctions), in addition to any other remedies available to MapQuest at law or hereunder.

15.8. Statute of Limitations. You agree that regardless of any statute or law to the contrary, any claim or cause of action arising out of or related to use of the MapQuest Services or these Terms of Use must be filed by you within one (1) year after such claim or cause of action arose or be forever barred.

15.9. Consent to Further Contacts. You agree that MapQuest may contact You with respect to these Terms of Use, any other MapQuest products and services, and in relation to any marketing related-purposes.

ODC Open Database License (ODbL)

The Open Database License (ODbL) is a license agreement intended to allow users to freely share, modify, and use this Database while maintaining this same freedom for others. Many databases are covered by copyright, and therefore this document licenses these rights. Some jurisdictions, mainly in the European Union, have specific rights that cover databases, and so the ODbL addresses these rights, too. Finally,

the ODbL is also an agreement in contract for users of this Database to act in certain ways in return for accessing this Database.

Databases can contain a wide variety of types of content (images, audiovisual material, and sounds all in the same database, for example), and so the ODbL only governs the rights over the Database, and not the contents of the Database individually. Licensors should use the ODbL together with another license for the contents, if the contents have a single set of rights that uniformly covers all of the contents. If the contents have multiple sets of different rights, Licensors should describe what rights govern what contents together in the individual record or in some other way that clarifies what rights apply.

Sometimes the contents of a database, or the database itself, can be covered by other rights not addressed here (such as private contracts, trade mark over the name, or privacy rights / data protection rights over information in the contents), and so you are advised that you may have to consult other documents or clear other rights before doing activities not covered by this License.

The Licensor (as defined below) and You (as defined below) agree as follows:

1.0 Definitions of Capitalised Words

"Collective Database" – Means this Database in unmodified form as part of a collection of independent databases in themselves that together are assembled into a collective whole. A work that constitutes a Collective Database will not be considered a Derivative Database.

"Convey" – As a verb, means Using the Database, a Derivative Database, or the Database as part of a Collective Database in any way that enables a Person to make or receive copies of the Database or a Derivative Database. Conveying does not include interaction with a user through a computer network, or creating and Using a Produced Work, where no transfer of a copy of the Database or a Derivative Database occurs.

"Contents" – The contents of this Database, which includes the information, independent works, or other material collected into the Database. For example, the contents of the Database could be factual data or works such as images, audiovisual material, text, or sounds.

"Database" – A collection of material (the Contents) arranged in a systematic or methodical way and individually accessible by electronic or other means offered under the terms of this License.

"Database Directive" – Means Directive 96/9/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 11 March 1996 on the legal protection of databases, as amended or succeeded.

"Database Right" – Means rights resulting from the Chapter III ("suigeneris") rights in the Database Directive (as amended and as transposed by member states), which includes the Extraction and Re-utilisation of the whole or a Substantial part of the Contents, as well as any similar rights available in the relevant jurisdiction under Section 10.4.

"Derivative Database" – Means a database based upon the Database, and includes any translation, adaptation, arrangement, modification, or any other alteration of the Database or of a Substantial part of the Contents. This includes, but is not limited to, Extracting or Re-utilising the whole or a Substantial part of the Contents in a new Database.

"Extraction" – Means the permanent or temporary transfer of all or a Substantial part of the Contents to another medium by any means or in any form.

"License" – Means this license agreement and is both a license of rights such as copyright and Database Rights and an agreement in contract.

"Licensor" – Means the Person that offers the Database under the terms of this License.

"Person" – Means a natural or legal person or a body of persons corporate or incorporate.

"Produced Work" – a work (such as an image, audiovisual material, text, or sounds) resulting from using the whole or a Substantial part of the Contents (via a search or other query) from this Database, a Derivative Database, or this Database as part of a Collective Database.

"Publicly" – means to Persons other than You or under Your control by either more than 50% ownership or by the power to direct their activities (such as contracting with an independent consultant).

"Re-utilisation" – means any form of making available to the public all or a Substantial part of the Contents by the distribution of copies, by renting, by online or other forms of transmission.

"Substantial" – Means substantial in terms of quantity or quality or a combination of both. The repeated and systematic Extraction or Re-utilisation of insubstantial parts of the Contents may amount to the Extraction or Re-utilisation of a Substantial part of the Contents.

"Use" – As a verb, means doing any act that is restricted by copyrightor Database Rights whether in the original medium or any other; and includes without limitation distributing, copying, publicly performing,

publicly displaying, and preparing derivative works of the Database, as well as modifying the Database as may be technically necessary to use it in a different mode or format.

"You" – Means a Person exercising rights under this License who has not previously violated the terms of this License with respect to the Database, or who has received express permission from the Licensor to exercise rights under this License despite a previous violation.

Words in the singular include the plural and vice versa.

2.0 What this License covers

2.1 Legal effect of this document. This License is:

- a. A license of applicable copyright and neighbouring rights;
- b. A license of the Database Right; and
- c. An agreement in contract between You and the Licensor.

2.2 Legal rights covered. This License covers the legal rights in the Database, including:

- a. Copyright. Any copyright or neighbouring rights in the Database. The copyright licensed includes any individual elements of the Database, but does not cover the copyright over the Contents independent of this Database. See Section 2.4 for details. Copyright law varies between jurisdictions, but is likely to cover: the Database model or schema, which is the structure, arrangement, and organization of the Database, and can also include the Database tables and table indexes; the data entry and output sheets; and the Field names of Contents stored in the Database;
- b. Database Rights. Database Rights only extend to the Extraction and Re-utilisation of the whole or a Substantial part of the Contents. Database Rights can apply even when there is no copyright over the Database. Database Rights can also apply when the Contents are removed from the Database and are elected and arranged in a way that would not infringe any applicable copyright; and
- c. Contract. This is an agreement between You and the Licensor for access to the Database. In return you agree to certain conditions of use on this access as outlined in this License.

2.3 Rights not covered.

- a. This License does not apply to computer programs used in the making or operation of the Database;
- b. This License does not cover any patents over the Contents or the Database; and
- c. This License does not cover any trademarks associated with the Database.

2.4 Relationship to Contents in the Database. The individual items of the Contents contained in this Database may be covered by other rights, including copyright, patent, data protection, privacy, or personality rights, and this License does not cover any rights (other than Database Rights or in contract) in individual Contents contained in the Database. For example, if used on a Database of images (the Contents), this License would not apply to copyright over individual images, which could have their own separate licenses, or one single license covering all of the rights over the images.

3.0 Rights granted

3.1 Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, the Licensor grants to You a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, terminable (but only under Section 9) license to Use the Database for the duration of any applicable copyright and Database Rights. These rights explicitly include commercial use, and do not exclude any field of endeavour. To the extent possible in the relevant jurisdiction, these rights may be exercised in all media and formats whether now known or created in the future. The rights granted cover, for example:

- a. Extraction and Re-utilisation of the whole or a Substantial part of the Contents;
- b. Creation of Derivative Databases;
- c. Creation of Collective Databases;
- d. Creation of temporary or permanent reproductions by any means and in any form, in whole or in part, including of any Derivative Databases or as a part of Collective Databases; and
- e. Distribution, communication, display, lending, making available, or performance to the public by any means and in any form, in whole or in part, including of any Derivative Database or as a part of Collective Databases.

3.2 Compulsory license schemes. For the avoidance of doubt:

- a. Non-waivable compulsory license schemes. In those jurisdictions in which the right to collect royalties through any statutory or compulsory licensing scheme cannot be waived, the Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect such royalties for any exercise by You of the rights granted under this License;
- b. Waivable compulsory license schemes. In those jurisdictions in which the right to collect royalties through any statutory or compulsory licensing scheme can be waived, the Licensor waives the exclusive right

to collect such royalties for any exercise by You of the rights granted under this License; and,

c. Voluntary license schemes. The Licensor waives the right to collect royalties, whether individually or, in the event that the Licensor is a member of a collecting society that administers voluntary licensing schemes, via that society, from any exercise by You of the rights granted under this License.

3.3 The right to release the Database under different terms, or to stop distributing or making available the Database, is reserved. Note that this Database may be multiple-licensed, and so You may have the choice of using alternative licenses for this Database. Subject to Section 10.4, all other rights not expressly granted by Licensor are reserved.

4.0 Conditions of Use

4.1 The rights granted in Section 3 above are expressly made subject to Your complying with the following conditions of use. These are important conditions of this License, and if You fail to follow them, You will be in material breach of its terms.

4.2 Notices. If You Publicly Convey this Database, any Derivative Database, or the Database as part of a Collective Database, then You must:

- a. Do so only under the terms of this License or another license permitted under Section 4.4;
 - b. Include a copy of this License (or, as applicable, a license permitted under Section 4.4) or its Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) with the Database or Derivative Database, including both in the Database or Derivative Database and in any relevant documentation; and
 - c. Keep intact any copyright or Database Right notices and notices that refer to this License.
- d. If it is not possible to put the required notices in a particular file due to its structure, then You must include the notices in a location (such as a relevant directory) where users would be likely to look for it.

4.3 Notice for using output (Contents). Creating and Using a Produced Work does not require the notice in Section 4.2. However, if you Publicly Use a Produced Work, You must include a notice associated with the Produced Work reasonably calculated to make any Person that uses, views, accesses, interacts with, or is otherwise exposed to the Produced Work aware that Content was obtained from the Database, Derivative Database, or the Database as part of a Collective Database, and that it is available under this License.

a. Example notice. The following text will satisfy notice under Section 4.3: Contains information from DATABASE NAME, which is made available here under the Open Database License (ODbL). DATABASE NAME should be replaced with the name of the Database and a hyperlink to the URI of the Database. "Open Database License" should contain a hyperlink to the URI of the text of this License. If hyperlinks are not possible, You should include the plain text of the required URI's with the above notice.

4.4 Share alike.

a. Any Derivative Database that You Publicly Use must be only under the terms of:

- i. This License;
- ii. A later version of this License similar in spirit to this License; or
- iii. A compatible license.

If You license the Derivative Database under one of the licenses mentioned in (iii), You must comply with the terms of that license.

b. For the avoidance of doubt, Extraction or Re-utilisation of the whole or a Substantial part of the Contents into a new database is a Derivative Database and must comply with Section 4.4.

c. Derivative Databases and Produced Works. A Derivative Database is Publicly Used and so must comply with Section 4.4. if a Produced Work created from the Derivative Database is Publicly Used.

d. Share Alike and additional Contents. For the avoidance of doubt, You must not add Contents to Derivative Databases under Section 4.4 a that are incompatible with the rights granted under this License.

e. Compatible licenses. Licensors may authorise a proxy to determine compatible licenses under Section 4.4 a iii. If they do so, the authorised proxy's public statement of acceptance of a compatible license grants You permission to use the compatible license.

4.5 Limits of Share Alike. The requirements of Section 4.4 do not apply in the following:

- a. For the avoidance of doubt, You are not required to license Collective Databases under this License if You incorporate this Database or a Derivative Database in the collection, but this License still applies to this Database or a Derivative Database as a part of the Collective Database;
- b. Using this Database, a Derivative Database, or this Database as part of a Collective Database to create a Produced Work does not create a Derivative Database for purposes of Section 4.4; and

c. Use of a Derivative Database internally within an organisation is not to the public and therefore does not fall under the requirements of Section 4.4.

4.6 Access to Derivative Databases. If You Publicly Use a Derivative Database or a Produced Work from a Derivative Database, You must also offer to recipients of the Derivative Database or Produced Work a copy in a machine readable form of:

- a. The entire Derivative Database; or
- b. A file containing all of the alterations made to the Database or the method of making the alterations to the Database (such as an algorithm), including any additional Contents, that make up all the differences between the Database and the Derivative Database. The Derivative Database (under a.) or alteration file (under b.) must be available at no more than a reasonable production cost for physical distributions and free of charge if distributed over the internet.

4.7 Technological measures and additional terms

a. This License does not allow You to impose (except subject to Section 4.7 b.) any terms or any technological measures on the Database, a Derivative Database, or the whole or a Substantial part of the Contents that alter or restrict the terms of this License, or any rights granted under it, or have the effect or intent of restricting the ability of any person to exercise those rights.

b. Parallel distribution. You may impose terms or technological measures on the Database, a Derivative Database, or the whole or a Substantial part of the Contents (a "Restricted Database") in contravention of Section 4.74 a. only if You also make a copy of the Database or a Derivative Database available to the recipient of the Restricted Database:

- i. That is available without additional fee;
- ii. That is available in a medium that does not alter or restrict the terms of this License, or any rights granted under it, or have the effect or intent of restricting the ability of any person to exercise those rights (an "Unrestricted Database"); and
- iii. The Unrestricted Database is at least as accessible to the recipient as a practical matter as the Restricted Database.

c. For the avoidance of doubt, You may place this Database or a Derivative Database in an authenticated environment, behind a password, or within a similar access control scheme provided that You do not alter or restrict the terms of this License or any rights granted under it or have the effect or intent of restricting the ability of any person to exercise those rights.

4.8 Licensing of others. You may not sublicense the Database. Each time You communicate the Database, the whole or Substantial part of the Contents, or any Derivative Database to anyone else in any way, the Licensor offers to the recipient a license to the Database on the same terms and conditions as this License. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License, but You may enforce any rights that You have over a Derivative Database. You are solely responsible for any modifications of a Derivative Database made by You or another Person at Your direction. You may not impose any further restrictions on the exercise of the rights granted or affirmed under this License.

5.0 Moral rights

5.1 Moral rights. This section covers moral rights, including any rights to be identified as the author of the Database or to object to treatment that would otherwise prejudice the author's honour and reputation, or any other derogatory treatment:

- a. For jurisdictions allowing waiver of moral rights, Licensor waives all moral rights that Licensor may have in the Database to the fullest extent possible by the law of the relevant jurisdiction under Section 10.4;
- b. If waiver of moral rights under Section 5.1 a in the relevant jurisdiction is not possible, Licensor agrees not to assert any moral rights over the Database and waives all claims in moral rights to the fullest extent possible by the law of the relevant jurisdiction under Section 10.4; and
- c. For jurisdictions not allowing waiver or an agreement not to assert moral rights under Section 5.1 a and b, the author may retain their moral rights over certain aspects of the Database. Please note that some jurisdictions do not allow for the waiver of moral rights, and so moral rights may still subsist over the Database in some jurisdictions.

6.0 Fair dealing, Database exceptions, and other rights not affected

6.1 This License does not affect any rights that You or anyone else may independently have under any applicable law to make any use of this Database, including without limitation:

- a. Exceptions to the Database Right including: Extraction of Contents from non-electronic Databases for private purposes, Extraction for purposes of illustration for teaching or scientific research, and Extraction or Re-utilisation for public security or an administrative or judicial procedure.

b. Fair dealing, fair use, or any other legally recognised limitation or exception to infringement of copyright or other applicable laws.

6.2 This License does not affect any rights of lawful users to Extract and Re-utilise insubstantial parts of the Contents, evaluated quantitatively or qualitatively, for any purposes whatsoever, including creating a Derivative Database (subject to other rights over the Contents, see Section 2.4). The repeated and systematic Extraction or Re-utilisation of insubstantial parts of the Contents may however amount to the Extraction or Re-utilisation of a Substantial part of the Contents.

7.0 Warranties and Disclaimer7.1 The Database is licensed by the Licensor "as is" and without any warranty of any kind, either express, implied, or arising by statute, custom, course of dealing, or trade usage. Licensor specifically disclaims any and all implied warranties or conditions of title, non-infringement, accuracy or completeness, the presence or absence of errors, fitness for a particular purpose, merchantability, or otherwise.

Some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of implied warranties, so this exclusion may not apply to You.

8.0 Limitation of liability

8.1 Subject to any liability that may not be excluded or limited by law, the Licensor is not liable for, and expressly excludes, all liability for loss or damage however and whenever caused to anyone by any use under this License, whether by You or by anyone else, and whether caused by any fault on the part of the Licensor or not. This exclusion of liability includes, but is not limited to, any special, incidental, consequential, punitive, or exemplary damages such as loss of revenue, data, anticipated profits, and lost business. This exclusion applies even if the Licensor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

8.2 If liability may not be excluded by law, it is limited to actual and direct financial loss to the extent it is caused by proved negligence on the part of the Licensor.

9.0 Termination of Your rights under this License

9.1 Any breach by You of the terms and conditions of this License automatically terminates this License with immediate effect and without notice to You. For the avoidance of doubt, Persons who have received the Database, the whole or a Substantial part of the Contents, Derivative Databases, or the Database as part of a Collective Database from You under this License will not have their licenses terminated provided their use is in full compliance with this License or a license granted under Section 4.8 of this License. Sections 1, 2, 7, 8, 9 and 10 will survive any termination of this License.

9.2 If You are not in breach of the terms of this License, the Licensor will not terminate Your rights under it.

9.3 Unless terminated under Section 9.1, this License is granted to You for the duration of applicable rights in the Database.

9.4 Reinstatement of rights. If you cease any breach of the terms and conditions of this License, then your full rights under this License will be reinstated:

- a. Provisionally and subject to permanent termination until the 60th day after cessation of breach;
- b. Permanently on the 60th day after cessation of breach unless otherwise reasonably notified by the Licensor; or
- c. Permanently if reasonably notified by the Licensor of the violation, this is the first time You have received notice of violation of this License from the Licensor, and You cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice.

Persons subject to permanent termination of rights are not eligible to be a recipient and receive a license under Section 4.8.

9.5 Notwithstanding the above, Licensor reserves the right to release the Database under different license terms or to stop distributing or making available the Database. Releasing the Database under different license terms or stopping the distribution of the Database will not withdraw this License (or any other license that has been, or is required to be, granted under the terms of this License), and this License will continue in full force and effect unless terminated as stated above.

10.0 General

10.1 If any provision of this License is held to be invalid or unenforceable, that must not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms and conditions of this License and each remaining provision of this License shall be valid and enforced to the fullest extent permitted by law.

10.2 This License is the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the rights granted here over the Database. It replaces any earlier understandings, agreements or representations with respect to the Database.

10.3 If You are in breach of the terms of this License, You will not be entitled to rely on the terms of this License or to complain of any breach by the Licensor.

10.4 Choice of law. This License takes effect in and will be governed by the laws of the relevant jurisdiction in which the License terms are sought to be enforced. If the standard suite of rights granted under applicable copyright law and Database Rights in the relevant jurisdiction includes additional rights not granted under this License, these additional rights are granted in this License in order to meet the terms of this License.

Warranty Remedies

Trimble's sole liability and your exclusive remedy under the warranties set forth above shall be, at Trimble's option, to repair or replace any Product that fails to conform to such warranty ("Nonconforming Product"), and/or issue a cash refund up to the purchase price paid by you for any such Nonconforming Product, excluding costs of installation, upon your return of the Nonconforming Product to Trimble in accordance with Trimble's product return procedures then in effect. Such remedy may include reimbursement of the cost of repairs for damage to third-party equipment onto which the Product is installed, if such damage is found to be directly caused by the Product as reasonably determined by Trimble following a root cause analysis.

Warranty Exclusions and Disclaimer

These warranties shall be applied only in the event and to the extent that (a) the Products and Software are properly and correctly installed, configured, interfaced, maintained, stored, and operated in accordance with Trimble's relevant operator's manual and specifications, and; (b) the Products and Software are not modified or misused. The preceding warranties shall not apply to, and Trimble shall not be responsible for defects or performance problems resulting from (i) the combination or utilization of the Product or Software with hardware or software products, information, data, systems, interfaces or devices not made, supplied or specified by Trimble; (ii) the operation of the Product or Software under any specification other than, or in addition to, Trimble's standard specifications for its products; (iii) the unauthorized, installation, modification, or use of the Product or Software; (iv) damage caused by accident, lightning or other electrical discharge, fresh or salt water immersion or spray (outside of Product specifications); or (v) normal wear and tear on consumable parts (e.g., batteries). Trimble does not warrant or guarantee the results obtained through the use of the Product or that software components will operate error free.

THE WARRANTIES ABOVE STATE TRIMBLE'S ENTIRE LIABILITY, AND YOUR EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES, RELATING TO THE PRODUCTS AND SOFTWARE. EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED HEREIN, THE PRODUCTS, SOFTWARE, AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTATION AND MATERIALS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND BY EITHER TRIMBLE NAVIGATION LIMITED OR ANYONE WHO HAS BEEN INVOLVED IN ITS CREATION, PRODUCTION, INSTALLATION, OR DISTRIBUTION INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. THE STATED EXPRESS WARRANTIES ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OBLIGATIONS OR LIABILITIES ON THE PART OF TRIMBLE ARISING OUT OF, OR IN CONNECTION WITH, ANY PRODUCTS OR SOFTWARE. BECAUSE SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON DURATION OR THE EXCLUSION OF AN IMPLIED WARRANTY, THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY OR FULLY APPLY TO YOU.

NOTICE REGARDING PRODUCTS EQUIPPED WITH TECHNOLOGY CAPABLE OF TRACKING SATELLITE SIGNALS FROM SATELLITE BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEMS (SBAS) (WAAS/EGNOS, AND MSAS), OMNISTAR, GPS, MODERNIZED GPS OR GLONASS SATELLITES, OR FROM IALA BEACON SOURCES: TRIMBLE IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR THE OPERATION OR FAILURE OF OPERATION OF ANY SATELLITE BASED POSITIONING SYSTEM OR THE AVAILABILITY OF ANY SATELLITE BASED POSITIONING SIGNALS.

Limitation or Liability

TRIMBLE'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER ANY PROVISION HEREIN SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT PAID BY YOU FOR THE PRODUCT OR SOFTWARE LICENSE. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL TRIMBLE OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER UNDER ANY CIRCUMSTANCE OR LEGAL THEORY RELATING IN ANY WAY TO THE PRODUCTS, SOFTWARE AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTATION AND MATERIALS, (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, OR ANY OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS), REGARDLESS WHETHER TRIMBLE HAS BEEN

ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF ANY SUCH LOSS AND REGARDLESS OF THE COURSE OF DEALING WHICH DEVELOPS OR HAS DEVELOPED BETWEEN YOU AND TRIMBLE. BECAUSE SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY OR FULLY APPLY TO YOU.

PLEASE NOTE: THE ABOVE TRIMBLE LIMITED WARRANTY PROVISIONS WILL NOT APPLY TO PRODUCTS PURCHASED IN THOSE JURISDICTIONS (E.G., MEMBER STATES OF THE EUROPEAN ECONOMIC AREA) IN WHICH PRODUCT WARRANTIES ARE THE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE LOCAL DEALER FROM WHOM THE PRODUCTS ARE ACQUIRED. IN SUCH A CASE, PLEASE CONTACT YOUR TRIMBLE DEALER FOR APPLICABLE WARRANTY INFORMATION.

Official Language

THE OFFICIAL LANGUAGE OF THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS IS ENGLISH. IN THE EVENT OF A CONFLICT BETWEEN ENGLISH AND OTHER LANGUAGE VERSIONS, THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE SHALL CONTROL.

Registration

To receive information regarding updates and new products, please contact your local dealer or visit the Trimble website at www.trimble.com/register. Upon registration you may select the newsletter, upgrade or new product information you desire.

Notices

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. TRIMBLE is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Responsible Party:

Trimble Navigation
935 Stewart Drive
Sunnyvale CA 94085
Telephone: 1-408 481 8000

Canada

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003. Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

This apparatus complies with Canadian RSS-GEN.

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme CNR-GEN du Canada.

Europe

This product has been tested and found to comply with the requirements for a Class A device pursuant to European Council Directive 2006/42/EC and 1999/5/EC, thereby satisfying the requirements for CE Marking and sale within the European Economic Area (EEA). Contains a radio module.

These requirements are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential or commercial environment.



Australia and New Zealand

This product conforms with the regulatory requirements of the Australian Communications and Media Authority (ACMA) EMC framework, thus satisfying the requirements for C-Tick Marking and sale within Australia and New Zealand.



Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE)

For product recycling instructions and more information, please go to www.trimble.com/ev.shtml.





Recycling in Europe: To recycle Trimble WEEE (Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment, products that run on electrical power.), Call +31 497 53 24 30, and ask for the “WEEE Associate”. Or, mail a request for recycling instructions to:

Trimble Europe BV
c/o Menlo Worldwide Logistics
Meerheide 45
5521 DZ Eersel, NL

Safety Information

Always follow the instructions that accompany a Warning or Caution. The information it provides is intended to minimize the risk of personal injury and/or damage to property. In particular, observe safety instructions that are presented in the following format:


 **WARNING** – This alert warns of a potential hazard which, if not avoided, could result in severe injury or even death.


 **CAUTION** – This alert warns of a potential hazard or unsafe practice which, if not avoided, could result in injury or property damage or irretrievable data loss.

Note – An absence of specific alerts does not mean that there are no safety risks involved.


Warnings


Auto guidance


 **WARNING** – Auto guidance systems cannot avoid items in the field such as obstacles. Make sure you are adequately trained to operate the auto guidance system.

 **WARNING** – Many large and sudden changes in satellite geometry caused by blocked satellites can cause significant position shifts. If operating under these conditions, auto-guidance systems can react abruptly. To avoid possible personal injury or damage to property under these conditions, disable the auto-guidance system and take manual control of the vehicle until conditions have cleared.

Calibration

 **WARNING** – Incorrect adjustment of *Manual Override Sensitivity* could cause this critical safety feature to fail, resulting in personal injury or damage to the vehicle. Do not choose a setting that is either too sensitive or not sensitive enough. It is vital to avoid setting the sensitivity so low that the system will not detect any steering wheel motion.

 **WARNING** – During the Deadzone calibration, the system moves the vehicle's steering wheel. To avoid injury, be prepared for sudden vehicle movement.

 **WARNING** – During flow calibration, the machine will become operational. Take all necessary precautions to ensure user safety. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.



WARNING – Material will be dispensed during calibration. Make sure that the implement is safe to operate.

Display



WARNING – When the temperature of the display case reaches 65° C (149 ° F) the display shows the following: WARNING! HOT SURFACE, DO NOT TOUCH. The display will dim the screen until the temperature returns to normal. Use caution when touching the display when this warning is visible.

Implement master switch



WARNING – When the implement is down and the master switch is in the On position, the machine is fully operational. Take all necessary precautions to ensure user safety. Failure to do so could result in injury or death.

Cautions

Calibration



CAUTION – Obstacles in the field can cause collisions, which may injure you and damage the vehicle. If an obstacle in the field makes it unsafe to continue the Automated Deadzone calibration, stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel to disengage the system.

- 1) Wait until the Precision-IQ field application prompts you that the phase is ready to begin.
 - 2) Look at the screen to determine whether the next phase will require a left or right turn.
 - 3) Reposition the vehicle so that the turn will use the space that you have available.
 - 4) Tap the button to begin the next phase.
-



CAUTION – The wheels can move abruptly during the Steering Proportional Gain procedure while the Autopilot system tests the hydraulic response to its steering commands. To avoid injury, be prepared for vehicle movement.

Display



CAUTION – If you leave the display powered on after shutting off the vehicle's ignition, the display power can drain the battery.



CAUTION – Do not press on the screen with a sharp item, such as a pencil. You may damage the surface of the screen.



CAUTION – Do not apply glass cleaner directly to the touchscreen.

GNSS interference



CAUTION – The GNSS antenna may experience interference if you operate the vehicle within 100 m (300 ft) of any power line, radar dish, or cell phone tower.

Vehicle setup



CAUTION – If you select a *Vehicle Profile* that is not suitable for your vehicle, you may experience degraded system performance.



CAUTION – If you delete a vehicle, all information about the vehicle will be erased.

USB socket



CAUTION – Do not remove the USB drive from the socket while the display is writing to or from the drive. This will corrupt the data.



CAUTION – Do not use a USB drive in each USB socket at the same time. If you are attempting to upgrade firmware using a USB drive and another USB drive is already in one of the sockets, the firmware upgrade will fail.

Contents

| | |
|--|-----------|
| Safety Information | 10 |
| Warnings | 10 |
| Cautions | 11 |
| 1 Introduction | 23 |
| Precision-IQ field application | 24 |
| Compatibility | 24 |
| Changes to this guide | 25 |
| About this guide | 26 |
| Availability of optional features | 26 |
| Additional Trimble resources | 26 |
| Technical assistance | 26 |
| 2 Precision-IQ application basics | 27 |
| Display power on/off | 28 |
| Automatic power on | 28 |
| Manual power on | 28 |
| Automatic power off | 28 |
| Manual power off | 28 |
| On-screen user guide | 30 |
| Help from the web | 30 |
| Touch screen basics | 30 |
| Interactive controls | 30 |
| Cleaning the touch screen | 32 |
| Common controls | 32 |
| Lists | 33 |
| On / Off buttons | 34 |
| Adjusters | 34 |
| Setup panels | 35 |
| On-screen keyboard | 35 |
| On-screen number pad | 36 |
| Main views | 37 |
| Launcher screen | 37 |
| Home screen | 37 |
| Run screen | 37 |
| Field Manager | 38 |
| Connected Farm Dashboard | 38 |
| Status bar | 39 |
| System bar | 40 |
| Navigation buttons | 40 |
| Emergency button | 40 |
| Screenshot | 40 |

| | |
|--|-----------|
| GNSS notification button | 41 |
| Main menu | 41 |
| Launcher screen | 42 |
| Interruption of services | 42 |
| Application menu button | 42 |
| Home screen | 43 |
| Field management buttons - left side | 44 |
| Setup buttons - right side | 45 |
| Run screen | 46 |
| Field operation buttons - left side | 47 |
| Feature operation buttons - right side | 49 |
| Field Manager | 51 |
| Access Field Manager | 52 |
| Prescriptions Manager | 56 |
| Connected Farm Dashboard | 57 |
| Data transfer | 58 |
| Upgrade with a USB drive | 58 |
| USB data transfer | 59 |
| USB VDB transfer | 59 |
| Office Sync data transfer | 60 |
| Transfer to Precision-IQ application | 60 |
| From Precision-IQ application to CFX-750 display or FmX integrated display | 61 |
| Transfer to Farm Works | 61 |
| From Precision-IQ application to Precision-IQ application | 64 |
| USB socket | 65 |
| Insert a USB drive | 65 |
| Remove USB Drive | 65 |
| Screen shots | 65 |
| 3 Settings | 67 |
| Settings | 68 |
| Precision-IQ application-specific settings | 68 |
| Precision-IQ application and display settings | 68 |
| Display-specific settings | 68 |
| Upgrades and unlocks | 68 |
| Access settings | 69 |
| Main menu | 69 |
| Shortcut | 69 |
| Launcher screen | 69 |
| Languages and units settings | 69 |
| Date and time settings | 70 |
| Users and passwords | 70 |
| Add a user | 70 |
| Take a photo of a user | 71 |

Contents

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Firmware upgrades | 71 |
| USB upgrades | 71 |
| Wireless upgrades | 72 |
| Feature unlocks | 73 |
| Manual code entry | 73 |
| QR code scan | 73 |
| Check for unlocks | 74 |
| Display settings | 74 |
| Mapping settings | 74 |
| Patterns settings | 75 |
| Curve Features | 75 |
| Headlands | 75 |
| Boundaries | 76 |
| Steering and guidance settings | 76 |
| ISOBUS settings | 78 |
| Task Controller | 78 |
| Virtual Terminal | 78 |
| Wi-Fi settings | 78 |
| Modem services settings | 78 |
| Modem settings | 79 |
| Network settings | 79 |
| Office Sync settings | 80 |
| Restore defaults | 80 |
| Admin User Options | 80 |
| System information | 81 |
| 4 Connectivity | 83 |
| GNSS receiver settings | 84 |
| SBAS corrections | 86 |
| RangePoint RTX corrections | 87 |
| OmniSTAR G2/HP/GR corrections setup | 89 |
| CenterPoint RTX setup | 91 |
| CenterPoint VRS corrections | 94 |
| RTK corrections | 96 |
| CAN message settings | 99 |
| Frequency and baud rate | 100 |
| DCM-300 modem initial setup | 101 |
| Office Sync setup | 102 |
| Requirements | 102 |
| Settings | 102 |
| Connectivity concepts | 104 |
| GNSS and drift | 104 |
| xFill technology | 104 |
| VRS | 108 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| 5 Vehicles | 109 |
| Vehicle setup | 110 |
| Overview of setup | 110 |
| Add a vehicle | 111 |
| Delete a vehicle | 112 |
| Edit a vehicle | 113 |
| Save a vehicle | 113 |
| Save a complete vehicle profile | 114 |
| Save an incomplete vehicle profile | 114 |
| Vehicle summary | 114 |
| Select a vehicle | 115 |
| Manual guidance setup | 116 |
| Autopilot system setup | 117 |
| Guidance system settings for Autopilot system | 117 |
| Controller settings for Autopilot system | 118 |
| Sensor settings for Autopilot system | 119 |
| Vehicle measurements for Autopilot system | 120 |
| OnSwath | 122 |
| Autopilot system calibration | 123 |
| Calibration for non-tracked vehicles | 123 |
| Manual override sensitivity calibration | 124 |
| Steering sensor calibration | 125 |
| Automated steering deadzone calibration | 126 |
| Proportional steering gain | 131 |
| Roll correction calibration | 132 |
| Line acquisition | 136 |
| Engage aggressiveness | 137 |
| EZ-Pilot system setup | 138 |
| Guidance selection for the EZ-Pilot system | 138 |
| Controller settings for EZ-Pilot system | 138 |
| Steering speed settings for EZ-Pilot system | 139 |
| Vehicle measurements for EZ-Pilot system | 140 |
| EZ-Pilot system calibrations | 141 |
| Roll correction for EZ-Pilot system | 141 |
| Angle per turn calibration for EZ-Pilot system | 142 |
| Online aggressiveness calibration for EZ-Pilot system | 142 |
| Line acquisition calibration for EZ-Pilot system | 143 |
| EZ-Steer system setup | 145 |
| Guidance selection for EZ-Steer system | 145 |
| Controller settings for EZ-Steer system | 145 |
| Steering and speed settings for EZ-Steer system | 146 |
| Vehicle measurements for EZ-Steer system | 147 |
| EZ-Steer system calibrations | 148 |
| Roll correction for EZ-Steer system | 148 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Angle per turn calibration for EZ-Steer system | 148 |
| 6 Fields | 149 |
| Field Basics | 150 |
| Boundaries | 150 |
| Guidance lines and patterns | 150 |
| Landmarks | 151 |
| Tasks, activities and coverage | 151 |
| Add a field | 152 |
| Select a field | 153 |
| Select a field through the map | 153 |
| Select a field from the list | 153 |
| Enter a field (Run screen) | 154 |
| Choose a field to enter | 154 |
| Edit a field (Field Manager) | 155 |
| 7 Implements | 157 |
| Implement setup | 158 |
| Add an implement | 158 |
| Save an implement | 158 |
| Select an implement | 159 |
| Edit an implement | 159 |
| Delete an implement | 159 |
| ISOBUS for implements | 161 |
| Task Controller setup | 161 |
| Implement setup for Task Controller | 161 |
| Equipment setup | 165 |
| Application control | 165 |
| Prior to setup | 166 |
| Channel setup | 166 |
| Setup diagram | 167 |
| Add a control channel | 167 |
| Section control | 168 |
| Rate control | 172 |
| Calibrate application control drives | 175 |
| Virtual tank/bin | 176 |
| Adjustments | 177 |
| Summary | 177 |
| Modify a control channel | 178 |
| Remove a control channel | 178 |
| Boom height control | 180 |
| Boom height control setup | 180 |
| Sensor location | 181 |
| Operation settings | 182 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Calibrate boom height control | 184 |
| Inputs | 187 |
| Add a sensor | 187 |
| Type of sensor | 187 |
| Location of sensor | 187 |
| Alarms | 188 |
| SIM | 188 |
| Inputs / Sensors calibration | 189 |
| Review implement summary | 190 |
| Prescriptions | 191 |
| Importing prescriptions | 191 |
| Exporting prescriptions | 191 |
| 8 Materials | 193 |
| Managing materials | 194 |
| Material list | 194 |
| Anhydrous | 194 |
| Granular fertilizer | 194 |
| Liquid | 194 |
| Granular seed | 195 |
| Row crop seed | 195 |
| Add a material | 196 |
| Edit a material | 198 |
| Delete a material | 198 |
| Assign a material to a channel | 198 |
| Calibrate material flow | 199 |
| 9 Operations | 201 |
| Preparing for operation | 202 |
| Choose a field to enter | 202 |
| Fields and guidance | 203 |
| Tasks | 204 |
| Layers | 204 |
| Adjustments during operation | 204 |
| Automatic transfer of data | 204 |
| Tasks | 206 |
| Data stored in each task | 206 |
| Create a task | 206 |
| Add a task (Run screen) | 207 |
| Review existing tasks (Field Manager) | 207 |
| Review existing tasks (Field Manager) | 207 |
| Edit a task (Field Manager) | 208 |
| Coverage logging | 209 |
| Manual coverage logging | 209 |

Contents

| | |
|---|-----|
| Automatic logging with engage | 209 |
| Editing layers | 209 |
| Vehicle operation | 210 |
| Vehicle position | 210 |
| Engage status with auto guidance | 211 |
| Steering adjustments | 212 |
| Guidance adjustments | 213 |
| Guidance patterns | 214 |
| Guidance creation buttons | 215 |
| Boundary creation (Run screen) | 217 |
| Boundary editing (Field Manager) | 218 |
| Boundary activation/deactivation (Field Manager) | 219 |
| AB guidance line creation (Run screen) | 220 |
| A+ guidance line creation (Run screen) | 221 |
| Curved line creation (Run screen) | 222 |
| Headland and infill pattern creation (Run screen) | 223 |
| Infill pattern shift | 225 |
| Change the infill pattern | 227 |
| Pivot pattern creation (Run screen) | 230 |
| Guidance pattern editing (Field Manager) | 231 |
| Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) | 232 |
| Guidance pattern adjustment (Run screen) | 233 |
| Guidance pattern shifting (Field Manager) | 234 |
| Landmarks | 235 |
| Landmark buttons | 235 |
| Landmark point creation (Run screen) | 236 |
| Landmark line creation (Run screen) | 236 |
| Landmark area creation (Run screen) | 237 |
| Landmark editing (Field Manager) | 238 |
| Layers | 239 |
| View coverage layers | 239 |
| Edit a coverage layer | 240 |
| Field-IQ system operations | 242 |
| Field-IQ system Master Switch Box | 242 |
| Field-IQ 12-section switch box | 243 |
| Section control | 244 |
| Rate control adjustments | 245 |
| Boom height control operation | 248 |
| Boom height adjustments | 250 |
| Prescriptions | 252 |
| Assign a prescription | 252 |
| Use a prescription | 253 |
| ISOBUS | 255 |
| Task Controller operation | 255 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Virtual Terminal operation | 257 |
| On-screen widgets | 259 |
| Access widgets | 259 |
| Minimize/maximize, resize | 259 |
| Move a widget | 259 |
| Remove a widget | 260 |
| Area status | 260 |
| ISOBUS Task Controller widget | 261 |
| Position status | 261 |
| Speed status | 263 |
| Virtual Terminal widget | 263 |
| Alerts and warnings | 265 |
| End of row warning | 265 |
| Tight turn warning | 265 |
| 10 Diagnostics / troubleshooting | 267 |
| Diagnostics | 268 |
| Precision-IQ field application | 269 |
| The display does not turn on. | 269 |
| The display is not responsive. | 269 |
| The map is not visible on the Home screen. | 269 |
| Autopilot system diagnostics | 270 |
| Steering performance for Autopilot system | 270 |
| Sensor performance for Autopilot system | 271 |
| NMEA messages | 272 |
| Boom Height Diagnostics | 274 |
| Sensors | 274 |
| Boom Status | 274 |
| Manual Control | 275 |
| DCM-300 modem status | 276 |
| EZ-Pilot system diagnostics | 277 |
| Steering performance for EZ-Pilot system | 277 |
| Sensor performance for EZ-Pilot system | 278 |
| DCM-300 modem diagnostics | 280 |
| Network Status | 280 |
| Device Info | 280 |
| Cellular | 280 |
| WiFi Network | 281 |
| EZ-Steer system diagnostics | 282 |
| Steering performance for EZ-Steer system | 282 |
| Messages and fault codes | 283 |
| Field-IQ diagnostics | 286 |
| Operations | 286 |
| Adjustments | 286 |

Contents

| | |
|---|------------|
| Hardware | 288 |
| GNSS and xFill technology status | 290 |
| xFill technology status | 290 |
| GNSS diagnostics | 292 |
| Solution Information | 292 |
| Skyplot | 292 |
| Troubleshooting | 293 |
| Poor accuracy (multipath) | 294 |
| Intermittent loss of lock on satellite | 294 |
| Loss of initialization | 294 |
| Not tracking RTK corrections | 295 |
| Poor signal / not receiving a clear signal | 295 |
| The receiver is not tracking any satellites. | 296 |
| Office Sync Diagnostics | 297 |
| ISOBUS diagnostics | 298 |
| Device tab | 298 |
| Recording and saving CAN logs | 298 |
| System diagnostics | 299 |
| System performance | 299 |
| TM-200 Module diagnostics | 300 |
| LED 1 | 300 |
| LED 2 | 300 |
| LED 3 | 300 |
| LED 3 and 4 combination | 300 |
| LED 4 | 300 |
| 11 Glossary | 303 |
| A | 304 |
| B | 304 |
| C | 304 |
| D | 305 |
| E | 306 |
| F | 306 |
| G | 306 |
| H | 307 |
| I | 307 |
| L | 308 |
| M | 308 |
| N | 308 |
| P | 309 |
| R | 309 |
| S | 309 |
| T | 310 |
| V | 310 |

| | |
|---------|-----|
| W | 311 |
|---------|-----|

Introduction

In this chapter:

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Precision-IQ field application | 24 |
| Changes to this guide | 25 |
| About this guide | 26 |

The Trimble® Precision IQ™ application available on the in-cab TMX-2050™ touch screen display provides affordable guidance, steering and precision agriculture functionality.

Precision-IQ field application

The TMX-2050™ field application is an easy-to-use advanced field management system which runs on the TMX-2050 display. The display consists of a 30 cm (12") touch-sensitive, color LCD screen.

Compatibility

Precision-IQ application is compatible with the following automated guidance and steering:

- [Trimble Autopilot™ automated steering system](#)
- [Trimble EZ-Steer® assisted steering system](#)
- [Trimble EZ-Pilot® steering system](#)

Precision-IQ application can use an array of additional products to maximize efficiency, including:

- Creating fields and guidance patterns
- Using guidance patterns for automatic guidance systems
- Logging coverage data
- Output of information for analysis in office-based software (for example Farm Works Software® solutions)
- [Field-IQ™ Boom Height Control and Spraying](#)
- Variable rate control

Changes to this guide

The change to Version 3.0, Revision A of this guide is the addition of CenterPoint™ RTX™ satellite fast convergence corrections for Europe. See [CenterPoint RTX Satellite corrections \(page 93\)](#).

About this guide

This manual describes how to install, configure, troubleshoot and use the Precision-IQ field application .

Availability of optional features

All available functions are covered in this manual, however, you may not see all of them on your screen. The Precision-IQ field application includes many optional features. Only the features you have unlocked will be available to you.

Additional Trimble resources

Sources of related information include the following:

- **Product manuals and other publications:** Access various publications (including product manuals, release notes and quick reference guides) about Trimble products at http://www.trimble.com/Support/Support_AZ.aspx.
- **Trimble training courses** - Consider a training course to help you use the Precision-IQ field application to its fullest potential. For more information, visit http://www.trimble.com/Support/Index_Training.aspx.

Technical assistance

If you cannot find the information you need in the product documentation, contact your local reseller.

Alternatively:

1. Visit http://www.trimble.com/support/index_support.aspx.
2. Select the type of support applicable to you.

If you need to contact Trimble technical support:

1. Visit <http://www.trimble.com/global-services/support.aspx>.
2. Click Request Technical Support and login to complete a support request.

Precision-IQ application basics

In this chapter:

| | |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Display power on/off | 28 |
| On-screen user guide | 30 |
| Touch screen basics | 30 |
| Common controls | 32 |
| Main views | 37 |
| Status bar | 39 |
| System bar | 40 |
| GNSS notification button | 41 |
| Main menu | 41 |
| Launcher screen | 42 |
| Home screen | 43 |
| Run screen | 46 |
| Field Manager | 51 |
| Prescriptions Manager | 56 |
| Connected Farm Dashboard | 57 |
| Data transfer | 58 |
| USB socket | 65 |
| Screen shots | 65 |

The Precision-IQ field application is a touch screen application that responds to common touch screen interactions. The **Home** and **Run** screens as well as the Field Manager and Connected Farm™ Dashboard are covered in this chapter.


Display power on/off

Note – The display must be correctly installed **before** powering on. For more information, see *TMX-2050 Display Cabling Guide*.

Automatic power on

If the display is connected to the ignition source, power on the vehicle. The TM-200 Module sends power to the display when the vehicle powers on.

The display powers on. After a short pause, the [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#) opens.


To open the Precision-IQ field application, tap .

Note – After you have initially powered on the display, the Precision-IQ field application may not open until the TM-200 Module has initialized or finished booting.

Manual power on

To turn on the display manually, hold the power button down briefly (about half a second). The power button is on the rear of the display.


The display powers on. After a short pause, the [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#) opens.

To open the Precision-IQ field application, tap .

Note – After you have initially powered on the display, the Precision-IQ field application may not open until the TM-200 Module has initialized or finished booting.

Automatic power off

If the display is connected to the ignition source, when you switch the ignition off, a shutdown/reboot dialog displays. If you do nothing the display shuts off in 60 seconds. If you choose not to shutdown the display, it will remain powered on indefinitely.

 **CAUTION** – If you leave the display powered on after shutting off the vehicle's ignition, the display power can drain the battery.

Manual power off

To manually turn the power off, hold the power down button for one to two seconds. See the steps below.

1. Turn off the display manually by holding the power button down for about two seconds.
2. Choose one of the following options:
 - Shutdown: Powers down the display
 - Reboot: Restarts the display
 - Cancel: Cancels the power off process


Note – Sometimes after you press the power button and tap **Shutdown**, the display does not immediately turn off. This is because the Precision-IQ field application is saving settings. The display will power off after all settings are saved.

If these steps do not cause the power to go off, you can force a shut down of the display by holding the power button for 5 seconds.

On-screen user guide

To access the on-screen user guide for the Precision-IQ field application, you have two options:

Option 1: Tap  on either the **Home** or **Run** screen. Then tap **User Guide**.

Option 2: Navigate to the [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#) and tap .

Note – If your system is engaged with an automatic steering system and you navigate to the Launcher screen to access the user guide, the steering system will disengage.

Help from the web

To obtain the User Guide from the web, go to http://www.trimble.com/Support/Support_AZ.aspx.

Touch screen basics


If you are unfamiliar with using a touch screen, this section contains the basics of using a touch screen and how to clean it.




Interactive controls


Use your fingers to interact with buttons, maps, lists and selectors.



CAUTION – Do not press on the screen with a sharp item, such as a pencil. You may damage the surface of the screen.

| Item | Action | Explanation |
|-----------------------|--|--|
| Buttons and selectors | Tapping  | <i>Tap</i> means to touch a point on the screen and then remove your finger from the screen. A <i>tap</i> is a single touch. You do not move your finger while touching the screen. You tap buttons, items in lists, points on a range, and so on. |
| Lists | Scrolling | When a list has more items than fit on a screen or in a box, you can move the list to see all items by scrolling up or down. To scroll: <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Touch anywhere in the list and hold your finger on the screen. |

| Item | Action | Explanation |
|--|---|--|
| |  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Move your finger in the direction that you want to move the list - left, right, up or down. 3. Remove your finger when you are satisfied with the position of the list. <p>For examples of lists, see Lists (page 33).</p> |
| Home screen Run screen Field Manager | Zooming in and out  | <p>You can enlarge the view to see more detail (zoom in) or reduce the view to see less detail but more area (zoom out). To zoom in:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Touch the screen where you want to see more detail with your thumb and a finger close together (or you can use two fingertips). 2. Move your fingers apart while still touching the screen. 3. Remove your fingers from the screen when you are satisfied with the zoom level. <p>To zoom out:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Touch the screen where you want to reduce the level of detail with your thumb and a finger an inch or more apart (or you can use two fingertips) 2. Move your fingers together while still touching the screen. 3. Remove your fingers from the screen when you are satisfied with the zoom level. |
| On the Home screen | Panning  | <p>Panning in a map on the Run screen moves the map left or right.</p> <p>Panning means you can shift the view to show information that is not in view on the screen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Touch anywhere on the screen with your finger and hold it on the screen. 2. Move your finger in the direction that you want to move the map. |

| Item | Action | Explanation |
|-------------------|---|---|
| | | 3. Remove your finger when you are satisfied with the position of the map. |
| Settings shortcut | Swiping down  | Swipe down on the upper right area of the screen to quickly access the brightness control and Display settings. See Display settings (page 74) . |

Cleaning the touch screen



CAUTION – Do not press on the screen with a sharp item, such as a pencil. You may damage the surface of the screen.

Use the following supplies to clean the touch screen of the display:

- Ammonia-free glass cleaner
- Soft, lint-free cotton cloth
- 50% isopropyl alcohol



CAUTION – Do not apply glass cleaner directly to the touchscreen.

1. Apply a small amount of ammonia-free glass cleaner to the cloth.
2. Gently rub the touchscreen with the cloth.
3. To remove stains or smudges, use a cotton cloth dampened with 50% isopropyl alcohol.



Tip – Clean the touch screen while it is powered down. It is easier to see dirt and fingerprints when the touch screen is dark.

Common controls

Common controls provide a way for you to:

- Complete settings and configuration with [Setup panels \(page 35\)](#)
- Enter information using an [On-screen keyboard \(page 35\)](#) and [On-screen number pad \(page 36\)](#)

- Work with [Lists \(page 33\)](#)
- Turn an option on or off with [On / Off buttons \(page 34\)](#)
- Choose values within a range using [Adjusters \(page 34\)](#)

Lists

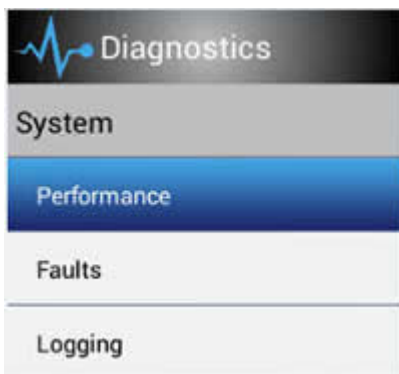
Lists vary depending on their function.

Menu lists

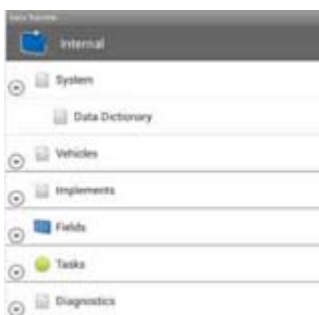
Menu lists contain a list of items that lead to additional information or areas.

- Tap a list item to reveal additional information or choices to the right of the menu.
- Some lists have expand/collapse capabilities. Tap the up or down arrow to expand and collapse sections.

Tap a list item to reveal additional information or choices to the right of the menu.



Some lists have expand/collapse capabilities. Tap the up or down arrow to expand and collapse sections.



Selection lists

Some lists contain items for you to select. If the list is longer than what is in your view, a scroll bar displays to the right of list items. You can use this to scroll up and down the list. After you tap your

selection on the list, the list closes.



On / Off buttons

On/off buttons enable you to turn items on and off.

The red X indicates this item is turned off. Tap to turn the item on.



The green check mark indicates this item is turned on. Tap to turn the item off.



Adjusters

With adjusters, you can select a value from an available range.

Example: Slider bars

The pointer (rectangular button on the slider bar) indicates the value.



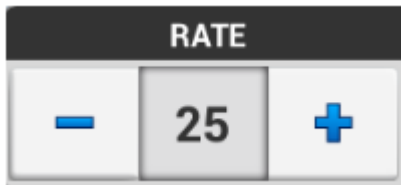
To use the slider bar, you can:

- Change the value by increments - Tap on the plus/minus signs at each end of the slider bar, in the direction that you want to move the pointer.
- Move to a value:
 - a. Touch the pointer on the slider bar.
 - b. Move the pointer toward the minus or plus sign.
 - c. Remove your finger when you are satisfied with the position of the pointer.

- Enter an exact number - If the screen also has a button showing the value, tap it. Then use the on-screen number pad to enter the number.

Example: Increase/decrease adjusters



Adjusters with plus and minus buttons enable you to increase or decrease the number by tapping the plus/minus buttons. You can also tap on the number and enter the number using the on-screen keyboard/number pad.



Setup panels





Panels display so that you can setup or configure items. Panels include a set of controls specifically for that setup or configuration.



| Button | Explanation |
|---|--|
| Next | Tap to go to the next section. (Displayed within the setup panel.) |
| Back | Tap to go to the previous section. (Displayed within the settings panel.) |
| Sections of setup | Tap various buttons at the top of the panel to go to section out of sequence after initial setup. |
|  | Within the setup panel at the Summary section, tap to save the settings you currently entered and end the setup process. |
|  | Tap (located on the bottom display bar) to go to the <i>Home</i> screen and exit the setup process without saving any currently entered settings. (See Status bar (page 39) .) |





On-screen keyboard

The on-screen keyboard displays when you tap a field for entering information. You can enter text or numbers.

| To: | Tap... |
|--|--|
| Enter number(s) | The number on the on-screen keyboard |
| Enter letter(s) | The letter on the on-screen keyboard |
| Delete letters or numbers |  |
| Remove all the letters or numbers you have entered |  and hold down |
| Cause the keyboard to no longer display |   |

On-screen number pad

The on-screen number pad displays when you tap a field for entering a number.


| To: | Tap... |
|---|--|
| Enter a number | The number |
| Delete number(s) |  |
| Remove all the numbers you have entered |  and hold down |
| Cause the keyboard to no longer display |   |

Main views

The Precision-IQ field application has different screens for your work.

Launcher screen

The [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#) displays the applications available on the TMX-2050 display in the same way any Android application does. When you power on the display or reboot it, the Launcher screen is the first screen to display.

To go to the Launcher screen, tap the Home button  on the [System bar \(page 40\)](#).



Home screen

The [Home screen \(page 43\)](#) is primarily for set up, including:

- Adding fields
- Creating, setting up and calibrating vehicles, implements and materials



Run screen

At the [Run screen \(page 46\)](#), you:

- Perform field activities
- Create guidance mapping elements (boundaries, guidance patterns, and landmarks)

- Make adjustments to steering guidance, and rate and section control
- Log coverage



Field Manager

At the [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#), you:

- Activate the guidance mapping elements you want to follow
- Edit and refine guidance mapping elements
- Associate fields to clients and farms
- Continue a task or begin a new task



Connected Farm Dashboard

The [Connected Farm Dashboard \(page 57\)](#) allows you access your fields and data with an Internet connection (including wireless). (Requires subscriptions and DCM-300 modem.)



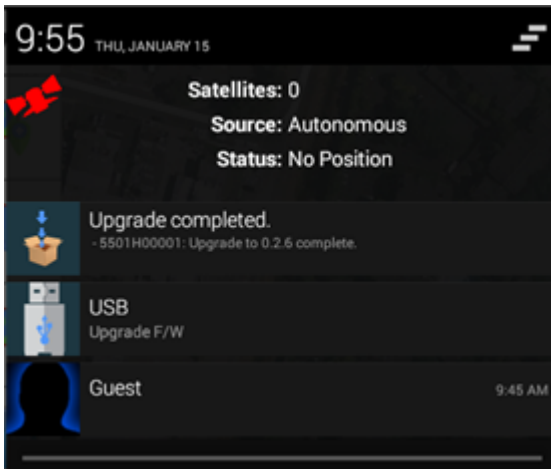
Status bar

On the top right of your screen, a status bar shows status such as GNSS status, upgrade and insertion of a USB drive.



To see more detail, place a finger on the top left of the top display bar and swipe down.


A detailed list displays.



You can tap specific buttons in the notification list to immediately access details on each item.

Also see [GNSS notification button \(page 41\)](#).

System bar

 **CAUTION** – Do not press on the screen with a sharp item, such as a pencil. You may damage the surface of the screen.




The system bar is always available at the bottom of the screen on the Precision-IQ field application.




Navigation buttons

Navigation buttons in the middle of the bottom display bar enable you to navigate between views.




| Button | Tap to... |
|---|--|
|  | Go to the Home screen (page 43) . |
|  | Go to the Launcher screen (page 42) . |
|  | See all views. Tap the view you want to fill the screen. |

Emergency button

In the middle of the bottom bar, the Emergency button is displayed at all times. To cancel all functions controlled by the display, tap . This button is useful if you need to quickly disengage an automatic steering system.

Note – *Tapping this button does not turn the vehicle off or stop it. It only cancels display-controlled functions such as automatic steering systems, spraying, seeding and so on.*




Screenshot

To capture a screen, tap the camera button  on the far right of the bottom display bar. See [Screen shots \(page 65\)](#).


GNSS notification button

A GNSS notification button displays on the top display bar to indicate the status of your GNSS connection.

Swipe to see the detail menu. See [Status bar \(page 39\)](#). Tap the GNSS button on the menu. The system takes you to the Diagnostics screen for any troubleshooting you want to do.

| Notification Button | Indicates... |
|---|----------------------------------|
|  Green | GNSS connection is normal. |
|  Yellow | GNSS connection is converging. |
|  Red | No GNSS connection is available. |

Main menu

Tap  on either the **Home** or **Run** screen to access the main menu. A panel of buttons displays that you can tap to access the following areas:

- [Diagnostics \(page 268\)](#): Open the Diagnostics screen.
- [Settings \(page 68\)](#): Open the settings screen.
- [Data transfer \(page 58\)](#): Go to the Data Transfer screen.
- [On-screen user guide \(page 30\)](#): Display the on-screen user guide.
- Virtual Terminal: Open the Virtual Terminal to set up ISO-certified equipment for Task Controller. (This button is not active unless you have turned on Virtual Terminal in Settings. See [ISOBUS settings \(page 78\)](#)).

Launcher screen



You open applications from the Launcher screen by tapping them, including:

- Precision-IQ field application
- FmX® Plus application
- Connected Farm applications


The Precision-IQ field application and FmX Plus application cannot be open at the same time. If you are switching from Precision-IQ application to the FmX Plus application:

1. Reboot the display by holding down the power button for 1-2 seconds.
2. When the option menu displays, tap **Reboot**.

Interruption of services

If automatic steering, spraying, seeding or other services are engaged in the Precision-IQ field application and you go to the Launcher screen, all automatic systems will disengage.

Application menu button

To see all the application icons on the Launcher screen, tap the application menu button .

Home screen



CAUTION – Do not press on the screen with a sharp item, such as a pencil. You may damage the surface of the screen.

When you open the Precision-IQ field application, the **Home** screen displays, showing a background of one of the following:

- With a functioning DCM-300 modem and a GNSS/GPS fix: A satellite image of the area.
- Without a functioning DCM-300 modem: A blank screen.

At the **Home** screen, you can complete tasks for setup and for managing fields, including:








- Set up and select vehicles, implements and materials
- Set up GNSS
- View the Connected Farm dashboard
- Create fields
- Enter the Field Manager to edit and refine fields and guidance boundaries and patterns
- Enter the **Run** screen to perform field activities

Buttons on the **Home** screen include:

- [Field management buttons - left side \(page 44\)](#) on the left side of the screen
- [Setup buttons - right side \(page 45\)](#) on the right side of the screen






Field management buttons - left side

Buttons on the left side of the **Home** screen are for field management.

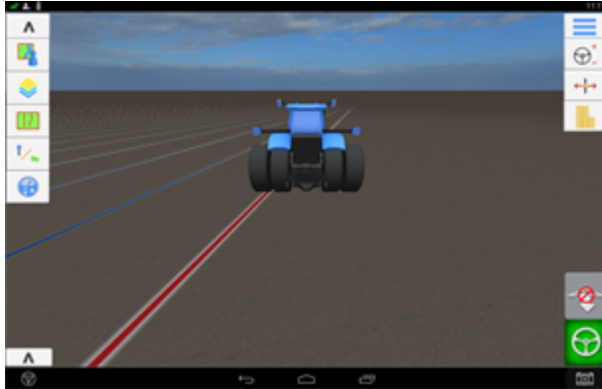
| Button | Tap to... |
|--|--|
| Hide  | Hide field operation buttons on the left side of the screen. |
| Show  | Show field operation buttons on the left side of the screen |
| Add field  | Add a new field. See Add a field (page 152) . |
| List fields  | Show a list of existing fields. Tap the name of the field to select it. Tap again to hide the list of fields. See Select a field (page 153) . |
| Field Manager  | Open Field Manager for the selected field. See Field Manager (page 51) . |
| Connected Farm  | Open the Connected Farm™ dashboard. (Requires a connected DCM-300 modem.) See Connected Farm Dashboard (page 57) . |
| Enter Field  | Begin field activities by entering the Run screen. (You must select a vehicle, implement, and field first.) The Run screen displays, where you can perform field activities, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Engage guidance • Log coverage for current operations • Create boundaries, guidance patterns, landmarks, and so on See Run screen (page 46) . |

Setup buttons - right side

Buttons on the right side of the **Home** screen are primarily for setup.

| Button | Tap to... |
|--|---|
| Menu  | Access the main menu. See Main menu (page 41) . |
| GNSS  | Set up GNSS. See GNSS receiver settings (page 84) . |
| Vehicle  | Add, edit or select a vehicle, as well as set up and calibrate an assisted guidance system such as the Autopilot, EZ-Pilot, or EZ-Steer system. See Add a vehicle (page 111) . |
| Implement  | Add, edit or select an implement. Set up and calibrate features for implements such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Field-IQ system Rate and Section Control • The Field-IQ system Boom Height Control • Implement lift switches and sensors See Implement setup (page 158) and Select an implement (page 159) . |
| Material  | Add, edit, and select materials. See Managing materials (page 194) . |

Run screen



CAUTION – Do not press on the screen with a sharp item, such as a pencil. You may damage the surface of the screen.

The **Run** screen enables you to perform field operations such as:

- Creating guidance boundaries and patterns
- Accessing Field Manager to edit and refine guidance boundaries and patterns
- Using auto guidance (with Autopilot system, EZ-Pilot system or EZ-Steer system)
- Controlling sections automatically or manually (with the Field-IQ system)
- Controlling rate application for liquids (with the Field-IQ system)
- Controlling boom height automatically (with the Field-IQ system)

Before you can enter the **Run** screen to perform field activities, you must:

- [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#)
- [Select an implement \(page 159\)](#)
- [Select a field \(page 153\)](#)
- Have a GNSS connection. See [GNSS receiver settings \(page 84\)](#).







For more information on selecting a vehicle, field and implement, see [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#).



Buttons on the **Run** screen include:

- [Field operation buttons - left side \(page 47\)](#) on the left side of the screen
- [Feature operation buttons - right side \(page 49\)](#) on the right side of the screen

Field operation buttons - left side





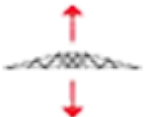
Buttons for field operation enable you to create guidance and landmark elements, view map layers, show or hide status widgets and access Field Manager.




| Button | Tap to... |
|---|--|
| Hide  | Hide field operation buttons on the left side of the screen. |
| Show  | Show field operation buttons on the left side of the screen. |
| Field Manager  | Open Field Manager for the selected field. See Field Manager (page 51) . |
| Layers  | View various map layers. Layers represent activities that have occurred. For example, a layer can show the coverage completed so far or the speed traveled over an area. See Layers (page 239) . |
| Guidance Lines and Patterns  | Open the guidance buttons to create: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Boundaries See Boundary creation (Run screen) (page 217). Guidance lines. See: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A+ guidance line creation (Run screen) (page 221) AB guidance line creation (Run screen) (page 220) Curved line creation (Run screen) (page 222) Pivot patterns See Pivot pattern creation (Run screen) (page 230) Headlands See Headland and infill pattern creation (Run screen) (page 223). Also see Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) (page 232) . |
| Landmarks  | View options to create: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Line See Landmark line creation (Run screen) (page 236). Areas |

| Button | Tap to... |
|---|---|
| | <p>See Landmark area creation (Run screen) (page 237)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Points <p>See Landmark point creation (Run screen) (page 236).</p> |
| Prescriptions  | <p>Open the Prescriptions Manager.</p> <p>See:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prescriptions Manager (page 56) • Use a prescription (page 253) • Assign a prescription (page 252) |
| Widgets  | <p>Open the widget menu to add individual widgets, add all widgets or remove all widgets.</p> <p>See On-screen widgets (page 259).</p> |

Feature operation buttons - right side

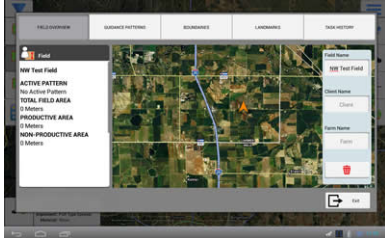
Using feature operation buttons, you can make adjustments to various features while performing field activities. With the exception of the **Menu** button, these buttons are specific to applications and depend on which features you are using.

| Button | Tap to... |
|---|--|
| Menu  | Access the main menu. See Main menu (page 41) . |
| Adjust Steering  | View options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust vehicle aggressiveness • Enable or disable autosteering See Steering adjustments (page 212) . |
| Adjust Guidance  | View options to adjust: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nudge • Re-mark • Implement Draft Correction See Guidance adjustments (page 213) . |
| Adjust Rate Control  | View options to adjust: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Actual and Target Rate • Status of Rate Channel • Sensor Status See Rate control adjustments (page 245) . |
| Adjust Boom Height  | View options to adjust the boom height: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Target Height • System Aggressiveness • Ground or Canopy • Sensors See Boom height adjustments (page 250) . |
| Logging | Begin logging your field activity, such as coverage. See Layers (page 204) . and Coverage logging (page 209) . |

| Button | Tap to... |
|--|---|
|  | |
| Engage Auto Guidance  | Engage your auto guidance system. See Vehicle operation (page 210) . |
| Engage Boom Height  | Engage your boom height system. See Boom height control operation (page 248) . |

Field Manager

At the Field Manager, you edit and refine elements in and associated with each field.





The Field Manager shows information directly associated with the field you have selected and enables you to perform functions listed in the following table.

Note – Add and select a field before entering Field Manager. See [Add a field \(page 152\)](#) and [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).



| Section | Functions Available |
|---|--|
| Field Overview See Field overview buttons (page 52) . | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rename the field, client and farm. Delete the field. See Edit a field (Field Manager) (page 155). |
| Guidance Patterns See Guidance pattern buttons (page 52) . | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activate or deactivate lines and patterns. Shift a line. Adjust the radius of a pattern. Resize a shape (other than pivot shape). See Guidance patterns (page 214). |
| Boundaries See Boundary buttons (page 53) . | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activate or deactivate a boundary. Resize a boundary. Rename a boundary. See Boundary editing (Field Manager) (page 218). |
| Landmarks See Landmark buttons (page 54) . | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Edit, delete or rename a landmark. Change the category that a landmark is assigned to. See Landmark editing (Field Manager) (page 238). |
| Task History See Task history buttons (page 55) . | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start a new task. Rename a task. See Tasks (page 206). |

Access Field Manager



You can access the Field Manager from either the **Home** or **Run** screen.







- At the **Home** screen, select a field. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#). Tap .
- At the **Run** screen, tap . The Field Manager opens the field you are currently in.

Field overview buttons



| Button or Entry Box | Tap to... |
|--|--|
| Exit  | Exit Field Manager. |
|  | Delete an item |
| Field name | Edit the field name. |
| Client name | Enter the name of the client (optional). |
| Farm name | Enter the name of the farm (optional). |





Guidance pattern buttons

| Button or Entry Box | Tap to... |
|---|--|
| Deactivate  (Black) | Deactivate a line. For more information, see Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) (page 232) . |
| Activate  (Red) | Activate a line. See Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) (page 232) . |
| Deactivate Shape | Deactivate a pattern (headland, boundary, pivot). |




| Button or Entry Box | Tap to... |
|---|---|
|  (Black) | See Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) (page 232) . |
| Activate Shape  (Red) | Activate a pattern (headland, boundary, pivot). For more information, see Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) (page 232) . |
|  | Adjust the radius of a pivot shape. For more information, see Guidance pattern editing (Field Manager) (page 231) . |
|  | Resize a shape other than a pivot shape. See Guidance pattern editing (Field Manager) (page 231) . |
|  | Shift a line. See Guidance pattern shifting (Field Manager) (page 234) . |
|  | Delete a selected line or pattern. |
| Name of Pattern | Change the name of the line or pattern. |

Boundary buttons


| Button or Entry Box | Tap to... |
|---|---|
| Deactivate Shape  (Black) | Deactivate a pattern (headland, boundary, pivot). See Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) (page 232) . |
| Activate Shape  (Red) | Activate a pattern (headland, boundary, pivot). See Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) (page 232) . |

| Button or Entry Box | Tap to... |
|---|--|
|  | Adjust the radius of a pivot shape. For more information, see Guidance pattern editing (Field Manager) (page 231) . |
|  | Resize a shape other than a pivot shape. See Guidance pattern editing (Field Manager) (page 231) . |
|  | Shift a line. See Guidance pattern shifting (Field Manager) (page 234) . |
|  | Delete a selected boundary. |
| Boundary Name | Change the name of the highlighted boundary. |

Landmark buttons

| Button or Entry Box | Tap to... |
|--|---|
| Category  | Assign a category to a landmark point, line or area. For more information, see Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) (page 232) . |
| Convert  | Convert a selected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Productive area to a non-productive one • Non-productive area to a productive one See Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager) (page 232) . |
|  | Delete a selected landmark. |
| Landmark Name | Change the name of the highlighted landmark. |

Task history buttons



| Button or Entry Box | Tap to... |
|---|---|
| Continue Task  | Continue the task you have selected in the list on the right-hand side. See Tasks (page 206) . |
| Start New Task | Begin a new task. |
| Task Name | Change the name of the highlighted task. |

Prescriptions Manager

At the Prescriptions Manager, you assign a prescription to a channel and determine additional settings related to the prescription. You can access the Prescriptions Manager from the **Run** screen,



tap . The Prescriptions Manager displays.

| Item | Tap to... |
|---|--|
| Enabled Channels list | Select the channel you want to assign a prescription to. |
| Prescription File Name | Show a list of prescription files associated with the field you have selected. |
| Column Name | Show the columns that are a part of the prescription file. |
| Column Units | Show the unit type you will be using for the prescription. |
| Lead Time | Enter the lead time before the application begins. |
| When Outside Prescription | Choose what happens when you are outside of the prescription boundary. Close (default), Default Rate or Last Rate. |
| Finish | Let the system know your entries are complete. |
| Next | Go to the next settings for prescription assignment. |
| Back | Go to the previous settings for prescription assignment. |
|  | Save your settings and exit the Prescriptions Manager. |
|  | Remove any edits to the settings and exit the Prescription Manager. |

Connected Farm Dashboard

The Connected Farm dashboard enables you to access your fields from a wired connection, or wireless Internet connection using a DCM-300 modem.



| Feature | Description | Requirements and Restrictions |
|-------------|---|--|
| Rainfall | Check rainfall totals for a location for the past 24 hours without the use of physical rain gauges. Updates every 10 minutes. | Requires subscription to RainWave. |
| Weather | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Add a single or multiple locations to view current temperature, wind speed, wind direction, humidity, and chance of precipitation. View the weather forecast for each location. Set up a Doppler radar map to show upcoming weather patterns. | Doppler radar map available in the United States and Canada only |
| Commodities | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Create your own commodity list and rearrange it to your preference. View the previous day's closing price for each commodity. | US only |

Data transfer

You can transfer data:



- Using a USB drive
- Wirelessly with Office Sync
- To another display


| Transfer From | Transfer To | See... |
|---|--|---|
| Precision-IQ application | FmX integrated display or FmX Plus application | USB data transfer (page 59) |
| Precision-IQ application | CFX-750™ display | USB data transfer (page 59) |
| FmX® integrated display or FmX Plus application | Precision-IQ application | Transfer to Precision-IQ application (page 60) |
| CFX-750 display | Precision-IQ application | Transfer to Precision-IQ application (page 60) |
| Precision-IQ application | Farm Works™ | Transfer to Farm Works (page 61) |
| Precision-IQ application | Precision-IQ application | From Precision-IQ application to Precision-IQ application (page 64) |

Upgrade with a USB drive

To upgrade firmware with a USB drive, follow the next steps.

Note – Do NOT shut down the system during upgrades. The upgrade process can take at least 10 minutes, depending on your system's configuration. The system will reboot automatically at least once. It can take up to two minutes for the reboot process to be complete.




1. Turn off the display manually by holding the power button down for about two seconds.
2. Tap **Shutdown**. The display powers off and saves a backup of the database.
3. Power on the display by holding down the power button briefly (about one half of a second).
4. Open the Precision-IQ field application.
5. Insert the USB drive in either socket of the TMX-2050 display.
6. Ensure you have the Precision-IQ field application open.
7. Swipe down on the top left of the top display bar.
8. When the detail menu displays, tap . The  button displays.

9. Tap . The Settings screen displays.
10. Tap Firmware Upgrades to continue the upgrade process. See [Firmware upgrades \(page 71\)](#).
11. The display notifies you that an upgrade is available.
12. Choose the version you want to upgrade to.
13. Tap the checkmark to continue the firmware upgrade.

USB data transfer

The following steps explain how to transfer your data from the Precision-IQ field application to a USB drive.

Note – Make sure your USB drive has the AgGPS folder on the root.

1. Make sure you have the Precision-IQ field application open.
2. Insert the USB drive into one of the USB sockets on the display.
3. Tap  on the **Home** or **Run** screen, or on the notification list. (For instructions on how to display the notification list, see [Status bar \(page 39\)](#).) The USB menu displays.
4. Tap **Settings**. The Data Transfer screen displays.
5. To expand an item on either list, tap a category name.
6. To select all files in a category, tap the box beside the category name. A check mark displays.
7. To deselect all files in a category, tap the box beside the name.
8. To select an individual file, tap the box beside the file name.
9. Tap  to move the item to the USB drive.
10. To delete an item, tap the box next to the item in either list and tap .

Note – You cannot delete an item that is actively selected or currently being transferred.

Also see [USB socket, 1](#).

USB VDB transfer

When you transfer data, saved vehicles do not include the vehicle configuration file (.vdb) for Autopilot. To transfer this configuration data:

1. Connect a laptop that has the Autopilot Toolbox software to the serial port of the NavController that contains the vehicle config file you want.
2. Using Autopilot Toolbox, save the config (.cfg) file to the laptop.
3. Transfer the saved config file from the laptop to a USB drive in the folder AgData/Profiles.

4. Make sure you have the Precision-IQ field application open.
5. Insert the USB drive containing the config file in the USB socket of the TMX-2050 display.


Office Sync data transfer

With a DCM-300 modem, and a subscription to Office Sync, information can wirelessly transfer from the display to the office or Connected Farm, including wireless upgrades. This requires:

- A Connected Farm account
- Unlock for Office Sync
- DCM-300 modem
- A data plan or access to WiFi

As part of Office Sync setup, you decide:

- How often you want the display to check the server for data transfer
- How often data is sent from the display to the office
- Whether to send the data automatically or after you have confirmed to send data

When Office Sync is transferring data,  displays in the top display bar.

See also:

- [Modem services settings \(page 78\)](#)
- [Office Sync Diagnostics \(page 297\)](#)




Transfer to Precision-IQ application

To move files from the CFX-750™ display, FmX integrated display or FmX Plus application to the Precision-IQ field application, follow the steps below.

Note – Make sure your USB drive has the AgGPS folder on the root.

1. Insert the USB drive into the CFX-750 display, FmX integrated display or TMX-2050 display.
If files were created on the CFX-750 display, change the file extension from .CFG to .cfg before transferring them to the Precision-IQ field application.
2. Transfer the files from the display to the USB drive.
3. Remove the USB drive from the CFX-750 display, FmX integrated display or TMX-2050 display.
4. Make sure you have the Precision-IQ field application open.
5. Insert the USB drive into one of the USB sockets on the TMX-2050 display.

See [USB socket \(page 65\)](#).

6. Tap  on the **Home** or **Run** screen.
7. Tap **Data Transfer**. The Data Transfer screen displays.
***Note** – Whether you are transferring data from the CFX-750 display, FmX integrated display or FmX Plus application, the item in the USB list will show the data as FmX integrated display data.*
8. Tap an item to expand it on the USB list.
9. Tap the item(s) you want to transfer.
10. Tap  to move the item(s) to the internal list.
11. To delete an item, tap the item in either list and tap .

From Precision-IQ application to CFX-750 display or FmX integrated display

To transfer from Precision-IQ field application to the CFX-750™ display, FmX integrated display or FmX Plus application using a USB drive, the same steps for [USB data transfer \(page 59\)](#) apply, except: All data transferred from the Precision-IQ field application must be "decoded" by Farm Works software before it can be used by these legacy displays. See [Transfer to Farm Works \(page 61\)](#).


Data can then be transferred by USB drive from the computer (using Farm Works) to the CFX-750™ display, FmX integrated display or FmX Plus application.

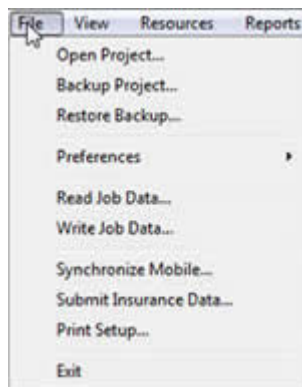
Note – Make sure your USB drive has the AgGPS folder on the root.

Transfer to Farm Works

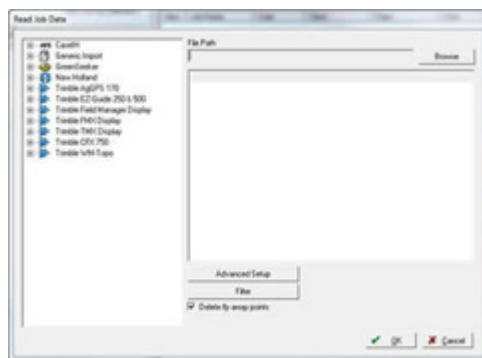
To transfer files from the Precision-IQ field application to Farm Works, follow the steps below.

Note – Make sure your USB drive has the AgGPS folder on the root.

1. Transfer the files from Precision-IQ field application to a USB drive.
2. Insert the drive into your computer and open Farm Works. If you have transferred the data using Office Sync, open Farm Works.
3. Open the **Read Job Data** dialog by clicking either of these:
 -  (Read Job Data icon)
 - File menu and select **Read Job Data** from the menu



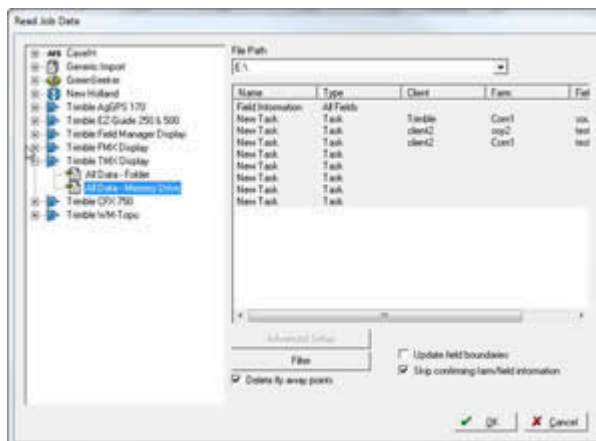
The system displays the **Read Job Data** window.



4. In the left column of the **Read Job Data** window, click + next to **Trimble TMX Display**.
5. Under **Trimble TMX Display**, select where the data is stored that you want to transfer.
 - For data transferred into Farm Works using a USB drive, select **All Data - Memory Drive**.



- For data transferred into Farm Works using Office Sync, select **All Data - Folder**.
6. Under **File Path**, click **Browse** to find the drive or folder where the data is located. After this is complete, your data will be listed in the right-hand column.

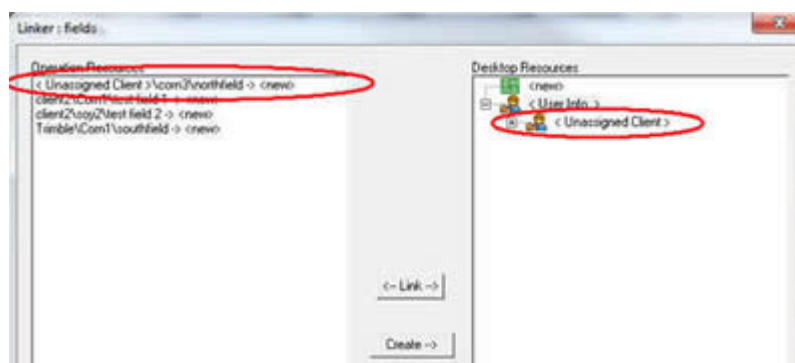


Note – If you wish to filter the files before transfer, see the online help for Farm Works for filtering instructions

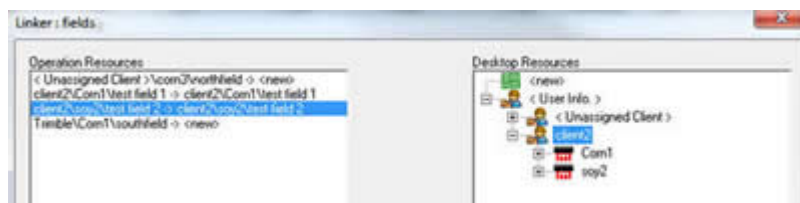
7. In the left-hand column, select the job(s) to import.
8. Click **OK**. The import progress shows as files are importing. After import is complete, the system **Linker** window displays.

The left-hand column titled **Operation Resources** shows the files created on the Precision-IQ field application. The right-hand column titled **Desktop Resources** shows files currently in Farm Works.

9. Select an item from the **Operation Resources** list.
 - a. If there is no counterpart to the item you selected in the **Desktop Resources** list, click the checkbox **Show Retired**. The system displays any additional files that were marked as **Retired**. If there is still no counterpart to this item in the **Desktop Resources** list, click **Create -->**. The system creates a new container on the desktop for the item and links it.



- b. If there is a counterpart to this item in the **Desktop Resources** list, highlight the item and click **<-- Link -->**. The information is now moved to that location on the desktop.
10. After all items have been linked or created, click **OK**. All files are stored in Farm Works at the correct location.



From Precision-IQ application to Precision-IQ application

From Precision-IQ field application to the office or another Precision-IQ field application:

| Type of transfer (without Farm Works) | Instructions |
|--|--|
| USB | To transfer data through a USB drive, see USB data transfer (page 59) . |
| Wireless (Office Sync) | <p>To transfer data using Office Sync:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure you meet the requirements for transferring using Office Sync. See From Precision-IQ application to Precision-IQ application (page 64) in this section. • Set up Office Sync. See Modem services settings (page 78). |


USB socket

The display has two USB sockets: one on the side of the display and one on the back of the Precision-IQ field application.

You can use a USB drive to transfer data to and from your Precision-IQ field application.



CAUTION – Do not use a USB drive in each USB socket at the same time. If you are attempting to upgrade firmware using a USB drive and another USB drive is already in one of the sockets, the firmware upgrade will fail.

The display senses when a USB drive is inserted into either the side or rear socket, and shows the icon  on the top display bar.

Insert a USB drive

1. Move the display so you that can see the USB socket on the side or back of the display.
2. Pull the rubber cover off the USB socket.
3. Insert the USB drive into the USB socket. On the display bar, a USB icon is displayed.

Remove USB Drive




CAUTION – Do not remove the USB drive from the socket while the display is writing to or from the drive. This will corrupt the data.

1. Move the display so you that can see the USB socket.
2. Make sure the LED light of the USB drive is not blinking (indicating data transfer is occurring).
3. Pull the USB drive out of the USB socket.
4. Press the rubber cover back onto the USB socket.

Screen shots

Occasionally, you may want to save an image of the touch screen, for example to provide information for troubleshooting purposes. When you take a screen shot, the display saves a .jpg file to a *Pictures* folder on the USB drive.

To take a screen shot:

1. Insert a USB drive in one of the USB ports on the display. (See [USB socket \(page 65\)](#).) The top display bar will show a USB icon.
2. Tap  to take a capture of the screen.
3. The display stores your screen shot on the USB drive under Pictures\screenshots.



CAUTION – Do not press on the screen with a sharp item, such as a pencil. You may damage the surface of the screen.

Note – *Make sure you have a USB drive inserted into a USB slot. If you take screen shots without a USB drive in the TMX-2050 display, you will not be able to retrieve them.*

Settings

In this chapter:

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| Settings | 68 |
| Access settings | 69 |
| Languages and units settings | 69 |
| Date and time settings | 70 |
| Users and passwords | 70 |
| Firmware upgrades | 71 |
| Feature unlocks | 73 |
| Display settings | 74 |
| Mapping settings | 74 |
| Patterns settings | 75 |
| Steering and guidance settings | 76 |
| ISOBUS settings | 78 |
| Wi-Fi settings | 78 |
| Modem services settings | 78 |
| Restore defaults | 80 |
| System information | 81 |

At the Settings screen, you can customize settings and add user profiles.

Settings

At the Precision-IQ field application, you can customize and set up many options for both the Precision-IQ field application and the FmX Plus application.

Precision-IQ application-specific settings

Some settings are specific to the Precision-IQ field application only:

- [Mapping settings \(page 74\)](#)
- [Patterns settings \(page 75\)](#)
- [ISOBUS settings \(page 78\)](#)
- [Steering and guidance settings \(page 76\)](#)
- [Wi-Fi settings \(page 78\)](#)

Precision-IQ application and display settings

Some settings affect both Precision-IQ application and the display, including the [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#):

- [Languages and units settings \(page 69\)](#)
- [Date and time settings \(page 70\)](#)
- [Users and passwords \(page 70\)](#)
- [Restore defaults \(page 80\)](#)

Display-specific settings

[Display settings \(page 74\)](#) affect the volume, brightness and sounds from the display.

Upgrades and unlocks

Navigate to these settings to upgrade firmware or unlock features:

- [Firmware upgrades \(page 71\)](#)
- [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#)

Access settings

You can access settings from the:

- [Main menu](#)
- [Shortcut to settings](#)
- [Launcher screen](#)



Main menu

You can access TMX-2050 display and Precision-IQ application settings from the main menu.

1. Tap .
2. Tap **Settings**.



Shortcut

You can access *TMX-2050 display settings only* using a shortcut.

1. At the upper right of the display screen, swipe down.
2. Tap .
3. Tap .

Launcher screen

You can access *TMX-2050 display settings only* from the [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#).

1. Tap  to navigate to the [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#).
2. Tap .

Note – *If you have an automatic steering system that is currently engaged, before you go to the Launcher screen, the steering system will disengage.*

Languages and units settings

At this settings page, you can set:

- The language shown on the screen
- The type of units of measure shown on the display

- Whether the password entry is always obscured or delayed from being obscured

| Setting | Tap to view or choose... |
|---------------|---|
| Languages | The language for the screen. Scroll the list and tap the language you want the Precision-IQ field application to use. |
| Display Units | The type of units you want on the display: English or Metric |
| Number Format | Either commas or periods. |

Date and time settings

The time and date is automatically obtained from the GNSS receiver in the TM-200 Module.

| Setting | Tap to... |
|--------------------|---|
| Select time zone | Choose time zone. Scroll the list of time zones and tap the time zone that applies to you. You must set the time zone. The system does not automatically set this. |
| Use 24-hour format | Turn on or off. |
| Select date format | Choose the date format you want to see on the screen. Options are: MM/dd/YYYY, dd/MM, YYYY/MM/dd. |

Users and passwords

User profiles and passwords are universal, meaning they are active for both the Precision-IQ field application and FmX Plus.

| Setting | Tap to... |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| Add User | Add a user |
| (Existing user name) | Edit the user profile |

Add a user

1. Tap **Add User**.
2. Enter the Operator ID.

3. Enter and confirm the user's password.
4. Tap **Create User**.

Take a photo of a user


You can capture a photo of the user, which will display:

- Next to the user's information in the Users and passwords section of Settings
 - On the top display bar when the user is logged in
1. At the Users and passwords section, Tap the user icon on the right of the user information.
 2. The camera activates and displays a frame on the screen. Make sure the user's face is contained within this frame.
 3. To capture the photo, tap **Capture**. The photo displays on the lower right. You can continue to tap **Capture** until you are satisfied with the photo.
 4. When you are ready to save the photo, tap **Done**.

Firmware upgrades


Note – Do NOT shut down the system during upgrades. The upgrade process can take at least 10 minutes, depending on your system's configuration. The system will reboot automatically at least once. It can take up to two minutes for the reboot process to be complete.

USB upgrades

1. Turn off the display manually by holding the power button down for about two seconds.
2. Tap **Shutdown**. The display powers off and saves a backup of the database.
3. Power on the display by holding down the power button briefly (about one half of a second).
4. Insert the USB drive in either socket of the TMX-2050 display.
5. At the [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#), tap .
6. Tap **Firmware Upgrades**.
7. A list displays with the firmware versions available.
8. Choose the version of the firmware package for Precision-IQ field application and FmX Plus application you want to upgrade to.
9. Tap the checkmark to continue the upgrade.

Wireless upgrades


Note – Wireless upgrades require a DCM-300 modem, a subscription to Office Sync and a data plan or access to WiFi. See [Wi-Fi settings \(page 78\)](#) and [DCM-300 modem initial setup \(page 101\)](#).

1. Tap **Shutdown**. The display powers off and saves a backup of the database.
2. Power on the display by holding down the power button briefly (about one half of a second).
3. At the [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#), tap .
4. Tap **Firmware Upgrades**.
5. A list displays with the firmware versions available.
6. Choose the version of the firmware package for Precision-IQ field application and FmX Plus application you want to upgrade to.
7. Tap the checkmark to continue the firmware upgrade.

Note – Do NOT shut down the system during upgrades. The upgrade process can take at least 10 minutes, depending on your system's configuration. The system will reboot automatically at least once. It can take up to two minutes for the reboot process to be complete.

Settings for wireless upgrades


You can control how Precision-IQ application checks for upgrades and when to wirelessly download them.

1. Tap .
2. Tap **Settings**.
3. Tap **Firmware Upgrades**.
4. Tap **Settings**.

| Setting | Explanation |
|---|--|
| Auto check for new upgrades | If you activate this, the system will automatically check for new upgrades. |
| Auto download new upgrades when available | This choice is only available if you have chosen to have the system automatically check for new upgrades. The system will install the updates as they are available. |
| Auto install firmware on power down | This choice is only available if you have chosen to have the system automatically check for new upgrades. The system will install the updates before the display powers off. |
| Only download via WiFi | This choice is only available if you have chosen to have the |


| Setting | Explanation |
|------------------------------------|---|
| | system automatically check for new upgrades. The system will download the updates only through a WiFi connection. |
| Show support beta releases in list | The system includes beta releases available for you to download. |

Check for updates

1. At the [Launcher screen \(page 42\)](#), tap .
2. Tap **Firmware Upgrades**.
3. Tap **Check for Updates**. The system checks for updates and begins the upgrade process immediately unless you have altered when the upgrade occurs in Settings.

Feature unlocks

For some optional features, you must enter the unlock password. If you do not have an unlock password, contact your local reseller.

1. Tap .
2. Tap **Settings**.
3. Tap **Feature Unlocks**. You can unlock features by manually entering the code, having the display read the QR code of the unlock, or checking for unlocks.

At the bottom of the screen, the list of currently locked features displays.

Manual code entry

1. Tap the Code text box and enter the code.
2. If the system accepts the code, tap **Accept**.
3. If the system rejects the code, you can try again or contact your reseller for help.

QR code scan

1. Tap **Read QR**.
2. Hold your code image in front of the camera for it to be read.
3. If the system accepts the code, Tap **Accept**.
4. If the system rejects the code, you can try again or contact your reseller for help.

Check for unlocks

1. Tap **Check for Unlocks**.
2. The request will be sent for the display to check for any available service or licenses. It may take several minutes for the unlocks to be processed.

Display settings

These are basic settings for the display.

| Setting | Tap to... |
|----------------------------|--|
| Manually Change Brightness | Adjust brightness of the display's backlight. |
| Volume | Adjust the volume of the sound. |
| Touch Screen Sounds | Turn on or off sounds associated with using the display. |

Mapping settings

These settings control guidance mapping features available on the **Run** screen.

| Setting | Tap to view or change... |
|------------------------------|--|
| Map Background Selection | The ground color for the Run screen. Options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Color: Brown, green or grey• Color with texture• Color with gridlines |
| Map Color Scheme | Day or night mode. |
| Map Orientation | Which point of view displays on the Run screen when following the position of the vehicle. Orientation options: North Up or Vehicle Up. |
| Record Coverage When Engaged | The system can switch on coverage when auto guidance is engaged, and switch off coverage when it is not engaged. Option for this setting is on or off. |

Patterns settings

At pattern settings, you can:

- Activate the auto close feature to use when you create boundaries and headlands
- Activate smoothing for curves and turn radius when traveling on guidance lines
- Customize the tight turn warning angle and look-ahead time

Curve Features

| Setting | Tap to view or change... |
|----------------------------|--|
| Curve Smoothing | The feature on or off. When curve smoothing is on, the system smooths out the guidance curve, making it wider. |
| Smooth Turn Radius | The size of the circle that the system will guide to. The larger the circle (degrees), the wider the turn. |
| Tight Turn Warning Angle | The number of degrees that will trigger a warning about a tight turning angle. See Tight turn warning (page 265) . |
| Tight Turn Look Ahead Time | The number of seconds before you approach a tight turn angle that the warning will show on the screen. See Tight turn warning (page 265) . |

Headlands

| Setting | Tap to view or change... |
|---------------------|--|
| Auto Close | Automatically closes the beginning and end point when you create boundaries and headlands. |
| Auto Close Distance | The distance between your beginning point and ending point for a headland. |

See [Headland and infill pattern creation \(Run screen\) \(page 223\)](#).

Boundaries

| Setting | Tap to view or change.... |
|---------------------|--|
| Auto Close | Automatically closes the beginning and end point when you create boundaries. |
| Auto Close Distance | The distance between your beginning point and ending point for a boundary. |

See [Boundary creation \(Run screen\) \(page 217\)](#).

Steering and guidance settings


The following settings enable you to customize controls related to steering and guidance.

| Setting | Tap to view or change... |
|---------------------------|---|
| Operator Timeout | The amount of time before Precision-IQ application disengages auto guidance and stop applications when there is no response to a shutdown message. |
| Nudge Increment | The increment used to nudge the guidance system with each tap. You can incrementally nudge a pattern in a perpendicular direction relative to the pattern. Nudging a pattern helps adjust for satellite drift. See Guidance pattern adjustment (Run screen) (page 233) and GNSS and drift (page 104) . |
| Implement Draft Increment | The increment used to nudge the implement to the current guidance line. See Guidance pattern adjustment (Run screen) (page 233) . |
| Aggressiveness Increment | The increment used to change aggressiveness. See Steering adjustments (page 212) . |
| Autosteering Lockout | Whether the feature is on or off. When lockout is on, Precision-IQ application does not offer an option to use auto guidance. |
| Re-mark Reset with Import | Remove all re-mark entries on with an import. See Guidance pattern adjustment (Run screen) (page 233) . |
| End of Row Distance | Distance for the end of row warning to display. See End of row warning (page 265) . |
| NMEA from Autopilot | On: NMEA messages can be sent from the NavController |

| Setting | Tap to view or change... |
|------------------|---|
| Diagnostics Port | Off: No messages are sent See NMEA messages (page 272) . |

ISOBUS settings


Task Controller

To use Task Controller when using ISO-certified equipment, tap  to activate this feature.

Note – This feature is optional and requires an unlock.

| For information on: | See: |
|--|---|
| Task Controller implement setup | Implement setup for Task Controller (page 161) |
| Setting up equipment for task controller | Equipment setup (page 165) |
| Using Task Controller | Task Controller operation (page 255) and ISOBUS Task Controller widget (page 261) |

Virtual Terminal

To use Virtual Terminal when using ISO-certified equipment, tap  to activate this feature.

See [Virtual Terminal operation \(page 257\)](#) and [Virtual Terminal widget \(page 263\)](#).

Wi-Fi settings

With a DCM-300 modem and additional subscription services, Wi-Fi enables you to transfer data wirelessly from vehicle to office. You can use Wi-Fi in addition to or instead of the cellular network.

At Wi-Fi network settings, turn on Wi-Fi.

At Available Networks, tap **Refresh** to scan for additional networks you can connect to.

Also see [DCM-300 modem diagnostics \(page 280\)](#) and [DCM-300 modem status \(page 276\)](#).

Modem services settings

Modem settings include:

- [Modem settings \(page 79\)](#)
- [Network settings \(page 79\)](#)
- [Office Sync settings \(page 80\)](#)

Modem settings

| Setting | Tap to view or change... |
|-------------|---|
| Device Name | The serial number of the DCM-300 modem. |

Network settings

Network (CDMA)

| Setting | Tap to... |
|------------|---|
| CDMA Reset | Reset the network connection. This will reset the connection between the modem and the service provider, and will remove all existing settings. |

The following additional settings that are read only and are automatically completed with the DCM-300 modem connects to the network:

- Mobile Directory Name (MDN)
- Electronic Serial Number (ESN)
- Mobile Identification Number (MIN)
- Preferred Roaming List (PRL)

Also see:

- [Office Sync Diagnostics \(page 297\)](#)
- [Office Sync data transfer \(page 60\)](#)

Network (GSM)

| Setting | Tap to... |
|----------|--|
| APN | View the access point name. |
| SIM PIN | The PIN for the SIM. |
| Advanced | Launch a displayed message to enter the GSM Username and GSM Password. |

The following additional settings that are read only and are automatically completed with the DCM-300 modem connects to the network:

- IMEI: International Mobile Equipment Identity
- SIM ICCID: IMS Charging Identifier
- SIM Status: Status of SIM

Office Sync settings

| Setting | Tap to... |
|--------------------------|--|
| Office Sync | Turn the feature on or off. |
| Check Server | Select how often you want Precision-IQ application to check the server to send data to the office. |
| Send Data | Select how often data is sent from the display to the office. |
| Auto-send without prompt | Turn the feature on or off. When on, Precision-IQ application will send data to the office without first asking for your confirmation. If this feature is on, data will be sent without notifying you. This can result in large files being transferred or the transfer of data you do not want transferred. |

Also see:

- [DCM-300 modem initial setup \(page 101\)](#)
- [Office Sync Diagnostics \(page 297\)](#)
- [Office Sync data transfer \(page 60\)](#)

Restore defaults

During troubleshooting, you may be asked by Support to perform a reset.

Admin User Options

| Setting | Tap to... |
|---|--|
| Restore Default user Preferences | Restore the default preferences for the user currently logged in. |
| Restore Preferences to Factory Defaults | Restore the display to default factory settings. Erases all custom settings for all user accounts. |
| Factory Reset | Erase all user accounts, system and application data, coverage, |

| Setting | Tap to... |
|---------|--|
| | configurations, feature unlocks, minor firmware updates and downloaded applications. Note – Only perform a factory reset on the advice of technical support. |

System information

| Information | Tap to view... |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Software Information | The list of software packets for diagnostics. |
| Current User Information | System information on the user currently logged in. See Users and passwords (page 70) . |
| Current Preference Information | The current settings of the user that is currently logged in. |
| Device Information | Technical information about the display. |

Connectivity

In this chapter:

| | |
|--|------------|
| GNSS receiver settings | 84 |
| DCM-300 modem initial setup | 101 |
| Office Sync setup | 102 |
| Connectivity concepts | 104 |


In addition to GNSS, you can use optional correction services, the DCM-300 modem, and Office Sync to transfer files to your Connected Farm application.

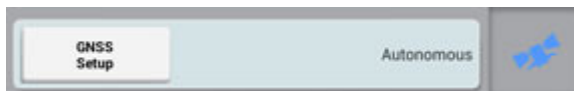
GNSS receiver settings

The TM-200 Module contains a built-in GNSS receiver. To set up the receiver, you choose:

- The type of antenna you are using
- The correction source you will be using, if any

Note – GNSS status will not show a converging or normal status until a vehicle has been configured and selected. See [GNSS notification button \(page 41\)](#).

1. After installing the AG25 GNSS antenna, power on the vehicle. This will power on the receiver.
2. Open the Precision-IQ field application.
3. Make sure all optional features are unlocked and all subscriptions are activated.
4. At the **Home** screen, tap .
5. Tap **GNSS Setup**.



The GNSS setup panel displays.

6. At the SELECTION section:
 - a. Tap **Antenna Type**, then select the antenna you are using from the list. Choices are AG25, Other, Zephyr™ II, Zephyr II (Ruggedized).
 - b. Tap **Correction Source** and select the correction source you will be using.


Note – You will not be able to select any correction source that is locked.

| Correction Source | Description |
|---|--|
| Autonomous (None) | No GPS corrections. If this is your correction source, there are no additional settings for you to enter. |
| SBAS corrections (page 86) | Satellite-based augmentation systems (SBAS) with free correction services |
| RangePoint RTX™ See RangePoint RTX corrections (page 87) | Satellite-based subscription service for corrections with pass-to-pass accuracy < 6" (15 cm) and GLONASS compatibility |
| OmniSTAR® wide-area differential GPS service See OmniSTAR G2/HP/GR | Satellite-based subscription service |

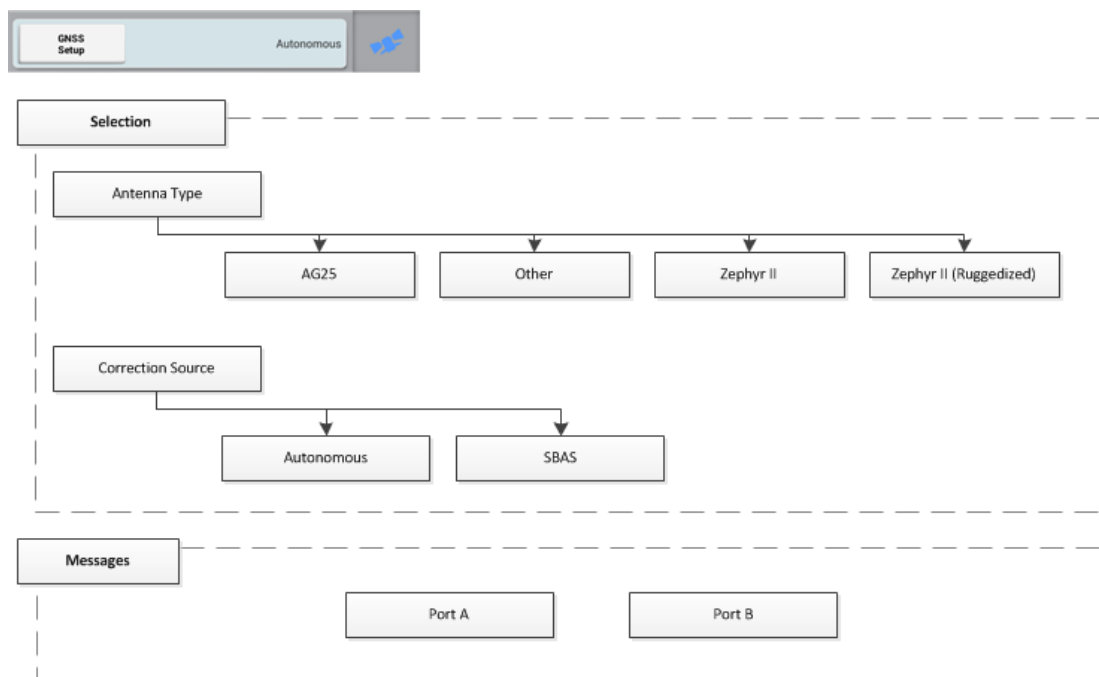
| Correction Source | Description |
|---|---|
| corrections setup (page 89) | |
| CenterPoint™ RTX CenterPoint RTX Modem corrections (page 91) | Cellular broadcast subscription service for corrections with < 1.5" (3.8 cm) accuracy and GLONASS compatibility. |
| CenterPoint RTX CenterPoint RTX Satellite corrections (page 93) | Satellite broadcast subscription service for corrections with < 1.5" (3.8 cm) accuracy and GLONASS compatibility. |
| CenterPoint VRS corrections (page 94) | Cellular-broadcast RTK corrections from a ground-based reference station using the a modem. (Requires a DCM-300 modem.) |
| RTK corrections (page 96) | Radio-broadcast corrections from a ground-based reference station. (Requires the AG-815 integrated radio.) |

- c. Tap **Position Quality** to change from the default Favor Accuracy.

| Setting | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Favor Accuracy (Default) | Use for operations needing highest accuracy. |
| Balanced Quality | Trades potential accuracy for longer production time. |
| Favor Availability | Expands production time further with potential for reduced accuracy. |

7. Tap  to save your settings.

SBAS corrections



The satellite-based augmentation systems (SBAS) with free correction services are:

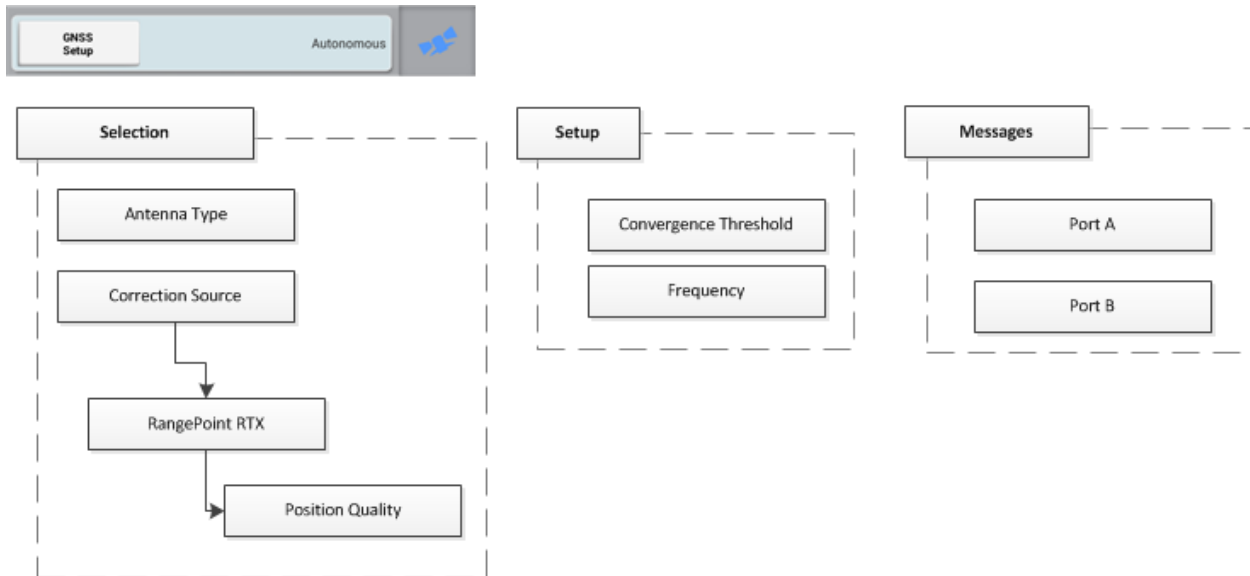
- WAAS (Wide Area Augmentation System) in North America
- EGNOS (European Geostationary Navigation Overlay Service) in Europe
- MSAS (Multi-functional Satellite Augmentation System) in Asia Pacific regions

| Setting | Options |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Correction Satellite Selection | Choose <i>Auto Select</i> for automatic satellite selection, or select a satellite from the list. |
| Position Quality | Select the appropriate choice: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Favor Accuracy (Default) : Use for operations needing highest accuracy (such as row crop planting and strip-till). • Balanced Quality: Trades potential accuracy for longer production time. • Favor Availability: Expands production time further with potential for reduced accuracy. |


RangePoint RTX corrections

RangePoint RTX is a satellite-based subscription service for corrections with pass-to-pass accuracy < 6" (15 cm) and GLONASS compatibility.

The GNSS receiver in the TM-200 Module receives these signals.



To set up this correction service:

1. Unlock RangePoint RTX. (See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#).)
2. At the **Home** screen, tap .
3. Tap **GNSS Setup** to display the setup panel.

| Setting | Options |
|-----------------------|--|
| Position Quality | Select the appropriate choice: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Favor Accuracy (Default) : Use for operations needing highest accuracy (such as row crop planting and strip-till). • Balanced Quality: Trades potential accuracy for longer production time. • Favor Availability: Expands production time further with potential for reduced accuracy. |
| Convergence Threshold | View the convergence level at which the system will allow you to start guidance operations. |
| Frequency | Choose the frequency for your region or enter a custom |

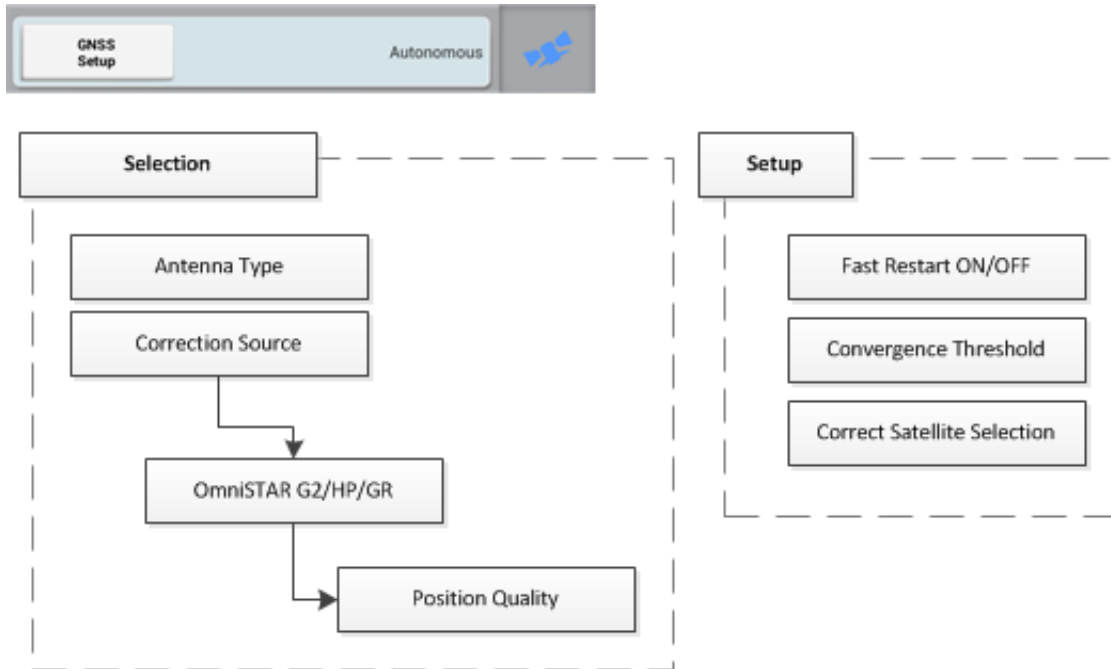
| Setting | Options |
|---------|--|
| | frequency. See Frequency and baud rate (page 100) . |

OmniSTAR G2/HP/GR corrections setup


Satellite-based subscription service:

- HP corrections have 2 - 4" (5 - 10 cm) accuracy
- G2 corrections have 3 - 4" (8 - 10 cm) accuracy and is compatible with GLONASS

The GNSS receiver in the TM-200 Module receives these signals.



To set up this correction service:

1. Unlock OmniSTAR G2/HP/GR. (See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#).)
2. At the **Home** screen, tap .
3. Tap **GNSS Setup** to display the setup panel.

| Setting | Options |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Position Quality | <p>Select the appropriate choice:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Favor Accuracy (Default) : Use for operations needing highest accuracy (such as row crop planting and strip-till). • Balanced Quality: Trades potential accuracy for longer production time. • Favor Availability: Expands production time further with potential for reduced accuracy. |
| Fast Restart | <p>Choose a Fast Restart option:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On (Default): Reduces the time for position to converge so that the system is ready for operation faster. Tap On when the vehicle is parked in an area with a clear view of the sky, and will not be moved until next use. • Off: Does not use Fast Restart. |
| Convergence Threshold | <p>Set the convergence level at which the system will allow you to start guidance operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter a convergence value closer to 12 inches for broad acre applications to begin working promptly. • Enter a convergence value closer to 4 inches for row crop applications to ensure desired accuracy is achieved before beginning work. |
| Correction Satellite Selection | <p>Tap <i>Auto Select</i> for automatic satellite selection, or select a satellite from the list. If you choose <i>CUSTOM</i>, enter the Frequency and Baud Rate.</p> |

CenterPoint RTX setup


The types of CenterPoint RTX correction are:

- [CenterPoint RTX Modem corrections \(page 91\)](#)
- [CenterPoint RTX Satellite corrections \(page 93\)](#): Standard convergence, fast convergence for US, fast convergence for EU

CenterPoint RTX Modem corrections

CenterPoint RTX Modem / Standard is a cellular broadcast subscription service for corrections with < 1.5" (3.8 cm) accuracy and GLONASS compatibility. The DCM-300 modem receives these signals.

To set up this correction service:

1. Connect the DCM-300 modem to the display.
2. Power on the DCM-300 modem and display by turning on the vehicle ignition.
3. Open the Precision-IQ field application.
4. Unlock CenterPoint RTX. (See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#).)
5. Reboot the DCM-300 modem by turning off the vehicle ignition.
6. Turn the vehicle ignition back on.
7. At the **Home** screen, tap .
8. Tap **GNSS Setup** to display the setup panel.

| Setting | Options |
|-----------------------|--|
| Position Quality | Select the appropriate choice: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Favor Accuracy (Default) : Use for operations needing highest accuracy (such as row crop planting and strip-till). • Balanced Quality: Trades potential accuracy for longer production time. • Favor Availability: Expands production time further with potential for reduced accuracy. |
| Fast Restart | Turn on or off. |
| Modem | DCM-300 is the option available. |
| Convergence Threshold | Set the convergence level at which the system will allow you to start guidance operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter a convergence value closer to 12 inches for broad acre |

| Setting | Options |
|---------|---|
| | <p>applications to begin working promptly.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Enter a convergence value closer to 4 inches for row crop applications to ensure desired accuracy is achieved before beginning work. |


CenterPoint RTX Satellite corrections

CenterPoint RTX satellite broadcast subscription services for corrections have a < 1.5" (3.8 cm) accuracy and GLONASS compatibility. The RTX satellite corrections available are:

- CenterPoint RTX Satellite Standard
- CenterPoint RTX Satellite Standard Fast for US
- CenterPoint RTX Satellite Standard Fast for EU

The GNSS receiver in the TM-200 Module receives these signals.

To set up any of these correction services:

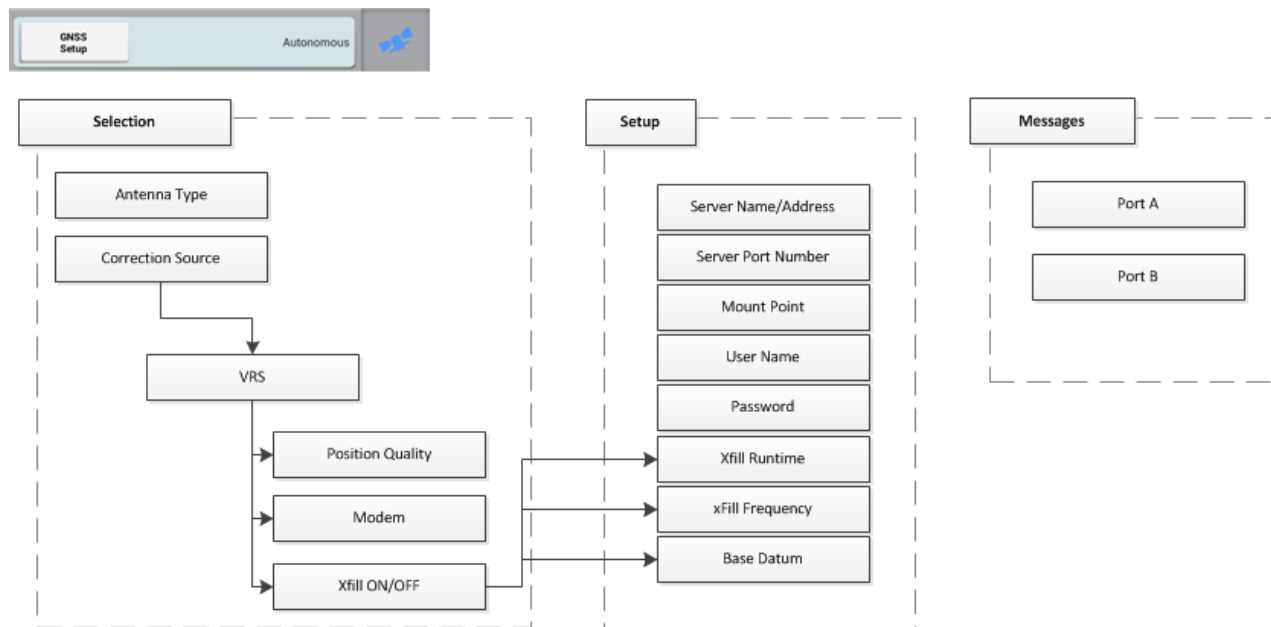
1. Unlock the appropriate type of convergence for CenterPoint RTX Satellite service. See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#).
2. At the **Home** screen, tap .
3. Tap **GNSS Setup** to display the setup panel. At the SELECTION tab, complete the settings.

| Setting | Options |
|-------------------|--|
| Antenna Type | Choose the type of antenna you are using. |
| Correction Source | Choose the appropriate service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CenterPoint RTX Satellite (Standard Convergence) • CenterPoint RTX US Satellite (Fast Convergence) • CenterPoint RTX EU Satellite (Fast Convergence) |
| Position Quality | Select the appropriate choice: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Favor Accuracy (Default) : Use for operations needing highest accuracy (such as row crop planting and strip-till). • Balanced Quality: Trades potential accuracy for longer production time. • Favor Availability: Expands production time further with potential for reduced accuracy. |


4. Tap the SETUP tab and complete the setting for frequency. See [Frequency and baud rate \(page 100\)](#).
5. Tap MESSAGING to complete any GNSS CAN message setup. See [CAN message settings \(page 99\)](#).

CenterPoint VRS corrections

CenterPoint VRS is a cellular-broadcast RTK correction service from a ground-based reference station using the a modem. (Requires a DCM-300 modem.)



To set up this correction service:

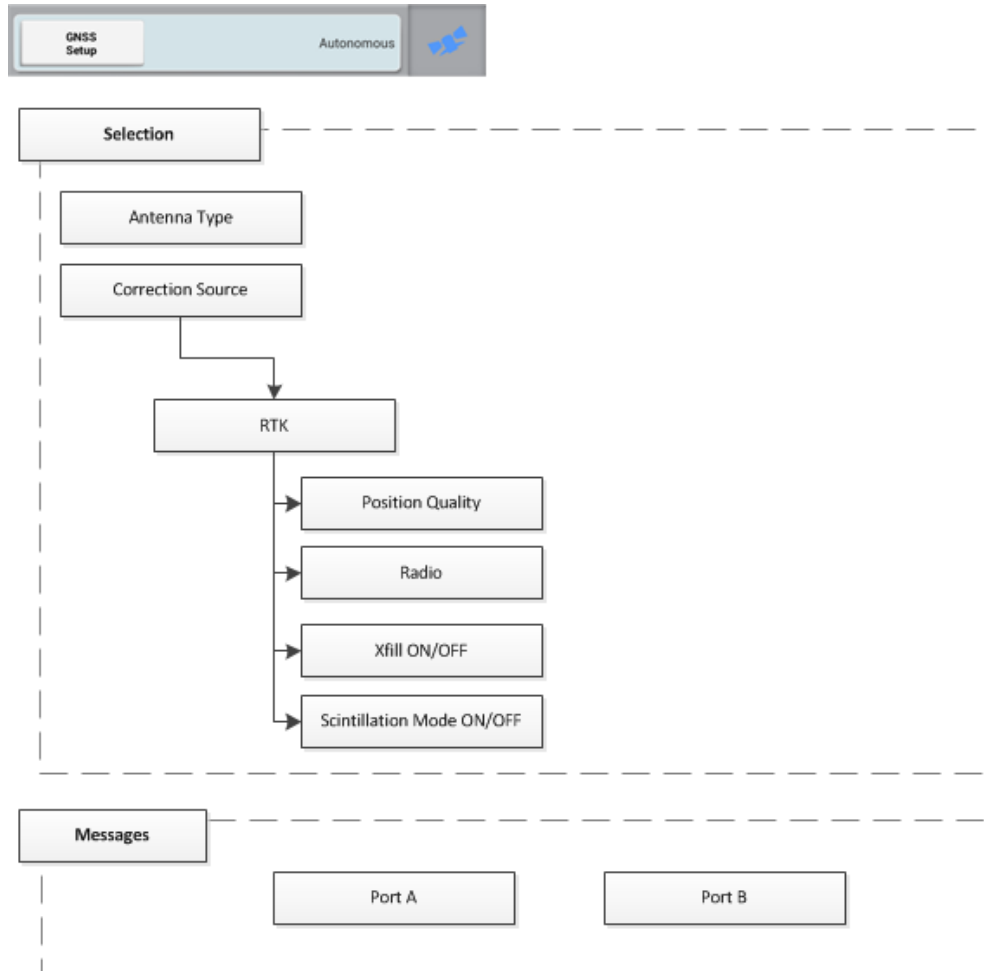
1. Connect the DCM-300 modem to the display.
2. Power on the DCM-300 modem and display by turning on the vehicle ignition.
3. Open the Precision-IQ field application.
4. Unlock VRS. (See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#).)
5. Reboot the DCM-300 modem by turning off the vehicle ignition.
6. Turn the vehicle ignition back on.
7. At the **Home** screen, tap .
8. Tap **GNSS Setup** to display the setup panel.

| Setting | Options |
|---------|---|
| Modem | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DCM-300 • Third Party NTRIP Modem (Cannot be used with Autopilot guidance) |
| xFill | Turn on or off. |


| Setting | Options |
|-------------------------|--|
| | See xFill technology (page 104) . |
| Position Quality | Select the appropriate choice: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Favor Accuracy (Default) : Use for operations needing highest accuracy (such as row crop planting and strip-till).• Balanced Quality: Trades potential accuracy for longer production time.• Favor Availability: Expands production time further with potential for reduced accuracy. |
| VRS Server Name/Address | Enter the value provided by your VRS Service provider. |
| Server Port Number | Enter the value provided by your VRS Service provider. |

RTK corrections

RTK is a radio-broadcast correction service originating from a ground-based reference station, and received by radio signal. The AG-815 integrated radio receives these signals.



To set up this correction service:

1. Unlock RTK. See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#).
2. Make sure the AG-815 integrated radio is installed.
3. At the **Home** screen, tap .
4. Tap **GNSS Setup** to display the setup panel.

| Setting | Options |
|-------------------------|---|
| Radio | Choose the frequency of the AG-815 integrated radio: 450 MHz or 900 MHz. |
| xFill | Turn xFill technology on or off. See xFill technology (page 104) . |
| Scintillation Mode | Turn mode on or off. |
| Position Quality | Select the appropriate choice: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Favor Accuracy (Default) : Use for operations needing highest accuracy (such as row crop planting and strip-till). • Balanced Quality: Trades potential accuracy for longer production time. • Favor Availability: Expands production time further with potential for reduced accuracy. |
| Channel/Radio Frequency | Tap to show a list of frequencies. If you have already entered frequencies, choose the appropriate one. Otherwise, tap in the row. A Modify button displays. Tap Modify. Enter a number from 403.0 MHz to 473.0 MHz for the frequency Add an optional description. You can enter up to 40 frequencies, numbers and symbols , using up to 9 characters including the decimal place (e.g., 450.00000). |
| Protocol | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCCEOC 4800 • PCCEOC 9600 • PCCEOT 4800 • PCCEOT 9600 • PCCFST 19200 • PCCSATEL 19200 • TRIMMARK 2 4800 • TRIMMARK 3 19200 • TT450 4800 • TT450 9600 • TT450S 1600 • TT450S 8000 |
| Secure RTK Keys | Enter up to 5 security keys , with an optional description for each. |

| Setting | Options |
|--|---|
| xFill Runtime (Available only if you turned on xFill.) | 20 minutes. With xFill selected as a backup source, this is how long the display will use xFill after the correction service becomes unavailable. |
| xFill RTK Base Datum (Available only if you turned on xFill.) | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• WGS84/ ITRF2008 (Default)• NAD83• ETRS89• GDA94 |


CAN message settings

If you wish to send messages from the GNSS receiver in the TM-200 Module, you can set up what messages will be sent from CAN port A or B. If you are using an ISO-certified implement, use this setting to send information to the implement such as speed. See [ISOBUS for implements \(page 161\)](#).

1. Tap the CAN port that you want to change settings for. Choose the messages for the GNSS receiver in the TM-200 Module to send to ISO-certified equipment.

The list that displays for each CAN port shows the messages and their parameter group number (PGN). For each message, you can choose how often the message is sent:

- Off (never sent)
- 10 Hz, 5 Hz or 1 Hz
- Every 5, 10, 30 or 60 seconds

2. Tap  to save your settings.

Frequency and baud rate


The frequencies and baud rates for regions are:

| Region | Frequency | Baud Rate |
|-----------------------|---------------|-----------|
| Asia/ Pacific | 1539.8325 MHz | 600 |
| Central North America | 1557.8150 MHz | 2400 |
| Eastern North America | 1557.8590 MHz | 600 |
| Europe/ Africa | 1539.9525 MHz | 600 |
| Europe (RTX EU) | 1529.7250 MHz | 2400 |
| Latin America | 1539.8325 MHz | 600 |
| Western North America | 1557.8615 MHz | 600 |

DCM-300 modem initial setup

The DCM-300 modem ships as a locked unit until it is installed with the display.

To use VRS correction or data transfer features, activate and configure these services.

1. Connect the DCM-300 modem to the display.
2. Power on the DCM-300 modem and display.
3. Open the Precision-IQ field application.
4. Activate the required services on the display. See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#).
 - a. To use VRS corrections, activate RTK and VRS.
 - b. Vehicle Sync and Office Sync also require activation.
5. Reboot the DCM-300 modem by turning off the vehicle ignition.
6. Open the Precision-IQ field application.
7. On the **Home** screen, tap , then tap **Settings**. The system settings screen displays.
8. Tap **Modem Service**.
9. Continue the instructions for setup at [Modem services settings \(page 78\)](#).

Office Sync setup

With the Office Sync service, you can electronically transfer data from the display to the office and to Connected Farm dashboard. Data will be:


- Sent to the office based on user settings.
- Received from the office based on user settings, with no inbox needed

Requirements

Requirements for exchanging data electronically include the following:

- A configured DCM-300 modem.
See:
[Modem services settings \(page 78\)](#)
[DCM-300 modem initial setup \(page 101\)](#)
- A Connected Farm account.
- A data plan or access to WiFi.
- Office Sync configured on the display to communicate with your Connected Farm storage area.
See [Modem services settings \(page 78\)](#).

Settings

1. At the **Home** screen, tap , then tap **Settings**. The **System Information** panel displays.
2. Tap **Modem Services**. Activate the feature and configure the settings.

| Setting | Tap to... |
|----------------|---|
| Feature Active | Turn the feature on or off. |
| Check Server | <p>Set how often you want the display to attempt to retrieve data from the server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Push: whenever a message is available it is sent to the display• Pull - 5 minutes: every 5 minutes check the server to see if there are messages to receive• Pull - 10 minutes: every 10 minutes check the server to see if there are messages to receive• Pull - 30 minutes: every 30 minutes check the server to see if |

| Setting | Tap to... |
|--------------------------|--|
| | there are messages to receive |
| Send Data | Choose when you want the display to send information to the office: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Hourly• On job completion• At the display power up• Prior to shutdown: delays the display's time for powering off |
| Auto Send Without Prompt | Select whether or not you want the display to send information to the office automatically. |

Also see:

- [Office Sync Diagnostics \(page 297\)](#)
- [Office Sync data transfer \(page 60\)](#)

Connectivity concepts

For more information about concepts associated with GNSS, correction services, see:

- [xFill technology \(page 104\)](#)
- [GNSS and drift \(page 104\)](#)
- [VRS \(page 108\)](#)

GNSS and drift

GNSS satellites are in continuous motion as they orbit the earth twice per day in a repeated pattern. Satellites transmit signals that the GNSS receiver translates to determine its position.

While performing field activities, you may notice differences in:

- Where the crop row is
- Where the guidance line was established
- Where the display is indicating the guidance line is now located.

This happens because GNSS satellite constellation patterns change over time and can experience interference.

Local and atmospheric conditions can impact signals. Temperature and humidity can delay signals. Signals can also be reflected from surrounding objects such as trees, causing multiple copies of the signal or a delay in the signal reaching the receiver. Data errors from the satellite can also affect accuracy.

xFill technology

xFill™ technology uses Trimble RTX technology to "fill in" for RTK corrections when there are temporary radio or Internet connection outages. xFill technology is a standard feature and is compatible with the AG25 GNSS antenna. The xFill technology can function with corrections from single-baseline RTK, VRS and CORS systems.

When there is an interruption of the RTK correction signal (either from the radio base station or from the VRS cellular network), the xFill technology performs corrections. xFill technology uses the last-known RTK position combined with the RTX precision satellite data to maintain a high level of horizontal positioning accuracy for up to 20 minutes. There is a smooth transition from RTK to xFill technology and back to RTK.

Automatic guidance systems

If an auto-steering system is engaged using RTK, the auto-steer system will stay engaged during the 20 minute xFill coverage. As soon as an RTK signal is available, the receiver will switch back to the RTK correction service and xFill will remain on standby in the background. If the system cannot

resume an RTK Fixed status within 20 minutes the system will fall back to DGPS correction and the auto-steer system will disengage.

Accuracy

xFill technology can maintain a relatively high level of horizontal accuracy throughout the RTK outage period. However, accuracy is primarily dependent on three factors:

- GNSS satellite availability and obstructions between the satellite and receiver (trees, buildings, and so on)
- Exactness of the base station position
- Length of time since the last RTK position (maximum allowable time is 20 minutes)

If you are concerned with maintaining sub-inch precision, disable the xFill feature.

Estimated accuracy over time while the xFill function has been active (with base station accuracy <20cm) is as follows:

- xFill runtime – no RTK corrections Estimated error
- 1-5 minutes 1-5cm
- 6-10 minutes 5-9cm
- 11-20 minutes 10-15cm

Dependence on satellite

xFill technology requires correction data from at least 5 satellites higher than 10 degrees from the horizon. If GLONASS is unlocked at the RTK level, xFill technology will also be able to use GLONASS satellites. Additionally, large objects such as trees, buildings, and grain bins will significantly decrease or completely block signal reception from all satellite types, including GPS, GLONASS, and corrections satellites. If these same obstructions are between the receiver and the satellite, they may also block xFill signals.



WARNING – Many large and sudden changes in satellite geometry caused by blocked satellites can cause significant position shifts. If operating under these conditions, auto-guidance systems can react abruptly. To avoid possible personal injury or damage to property under these conditions, disable the auto-guidance system and take manual control of the vehicle until conditions have cleared.

Dependence on base station position

When the RTK correction signal is lost, the RTX satellite begins providing correction based on the last RTK position. When you setup xFill and select the datum in which you surveyed your base station, the firmware translates your position into the ITRF datum reference frame to minimize drift. Any other inaccuracies in the base station position can cause a drift in position over time.

As time elapses, correction data from the satellites causes drift from the RTK line. The larger the difference in surveyed base station position, the larger the drift as shown in following table.

The following table shows how the xFill drift over time is impacted by the accuracy of the base station survey coordinates.

| xFill Elapsed Time | Survey Accuracy <20cm | Survey Accuracy <2m | Survey Accuracy <5m |
|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 0 to 5 min | 0 to 5 cm | 0 to 15 cm | 0 to 25 cm |
| 5 to 15 min | 2 cm to 12 cm | 10 cm to 0.3 m | 15cm to 0.5 m |
| 15 to 20 min | 9 cm to 15 cm | 15 cm to 0.4 m | 0.3m to 0.8 m |

If you discover that the surveyed location of your base station is not accurate, your options are:

- Turn off xFill (recommended by Trimble).
- Resurvey your base station. However, this will cause the movement of any stored AB lines that are reloaded/reused which is very undesirable to many RTK customers.

Base station survey

At initial base station installation, Trimble recommends surveying base stations by taking a 24-hour log and processing the data to receive position on your local datum. The accuracy of this position is stated in the report. Over time, primarily due to normal geological events, the base station position may change up to 7cm per year. Please refer to Trimble Support Note on this topic for further information.

When you select the datum used to survey your base station during the xFill technology setup, the receiver will automatically convert your position in the datum you select to the equivalent position in ITRF2008.

If your base station was properly surveyed within the last five years using one of the following coordinate systems, the xFill technology accuracy error will typically be less than 15cm over 20 minutes.

- WGS84/ITRF2008
- NAD83
- ETRS89
- GDA94

When working within an area with several RTK base stations, each base station should have a unique Base ID. When moving in range of another base station, go to the GPS setup on the display and enter the Base ID. This enables the receiver to recognize the new base station.

Base station survey with AutoBase™

If the Trimble Auto Base feature was used to survey the base, the accuracy can be >5m, which decreases the xFill technology accuracy. The datum used for this feature is WGS84. Trimble recommends testing xFill prior to using it in an application where the base station has only been surveyed with Auto Base.

VRS base station

If using VRS, the accuracy is typically <1cm . Contact your VRS network owner to determine the datum used for surveying and enter this datum during the xFill technology set-up. Trimble VRS Now™ network uses the following:

- VRS Now US: NAD83
- VRS Now Europe: ETRS89
- VRS Now TEC Europe: ETRS89
- OmniSTAR® CORS Tasmania: GDA94

Base station, survey unknown

If you do not know if your base station has been surveyed or the datum used for surveying, you should perform testing to approximate your base station errors or turn off xFill technology .

Estimating base station errors

To estimate the error in the position of the base station, options include:

- **Calculate Current Position and Compare to Set Position:** Collect two hours of position logs and submit them for post-processing (using the same coordinate system as previously used). Then enter the current set position and the newly calculated position into a GPS distance tool calculator.
- **xFill Accuracy Detection Using Cross Track Error:** Set-up your antenna and receiver in an open air environment (field or parking lot). Create an A+ line based on your parked position with RTK fixed. Unplug the radio or unplug the DCM-300 modem if using cellular signal. xFill technology will engage. Watch your cross track error (XTE) for a maximum of 20 minutes. Repeat several times. Keep in mind that this static test only tests the error in one direction (N/S or E/W).
- **xFill Accuracy During Passes in a Field:** To best see the drift of the xFill position over time:

Note – This procedure will only be accurate if you have already completed the Roll Calibration for auto-steering. See [Vehicle setup \(page 110\)](#).

- a. Create an A/B line in your field (or use an existing line). See [AB guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 220\)](#).
- b. Drive the line and once your cross track error (XTE) is very small, stop and drop a flag in the center of your hitch.
- c. Turn off RTK by changing the network ID or frequency.
- d. Drive around the field for several minutes (to represent your typical outage time) and return to the A/B line.
- e. Engage on the line and then when XTE is small and you're over your previous flag, stop and drop another flag. Compare the distance.

- f. Make a pass in the other direction on the same A/B line and drop a third flag. Compare the distance.

When not to use xFill technology

xFill technology is not recommended for:

- Land leveling and water management applications where a high degree of vertical accuracy is required.
- Any operation where you need accuracy better than 1" (2.4cm).
- When the base station has not been properly surveyed, or has been surveyed only with the Auto Base functionality and no tests have been performed to assess the risk of using xFill technology with that base station.

VRS

VRS™, an integrated system available with a subscription, is complementary to RTK and provides RTK corrections over a large geographic area, where robust cellular data coverage is available. Network processing ensures high accuracy throughout the whole coverage area.

VRS consists of:

- GPS/GNSS reference stations spread out over a large area, typically 30-45 miles (50-70 km) apart.
- A central server that uses Trimble proprietary software to create a correction model for the region covered by the network. GPS rovers communicate using a cell modem with the VRS server and receive RTK type corrections. The data from the reference stations is used to model errors throughout your region. The model is used to:
 - Create a network of virtual reference stations near your current location.
 - Provide a localized set of standard format correction messages for your roving receiver. Since the error models are updated every second, all rovers receive an optimal correction model after connecting on to the network. This ensures a high quality correction, and accuracy.

Network solution

All reference stations used in a VRS system can be interpreted as a network of continuously operated reference stations. The difference between VRS and CORS is that VRS provides a network solution. The position accuracy is maintained even if you move away from the single base but are still within the network.

Due to the longer range, fewer base stations can cover a greater region. Additionally, VRS networks may offer better signal coverage in rough terrain if the local cellular network is robust and provides good data coverage.

Vehicles

In this chapter:

| | |
|---|------------|
| Vehicle setup | 110 |
| Add a vehicle | 111 |
| Delete a vehicle | 112 |
| Edit a vehicle | 113 |
| Save a vehicle | 113 |
| Vehicle summary | 114 |
| Select a vehicle | 115 |
| Manual guidance setup | 116 |
| Autopilot system setup | 117 |
| OnSwath | 122 |
| Autopilot system calibration | 123 |
| EZ-Pilot system setup | 138 |
| EZ-Pilot system calibrations | 141 |
| EZ-Steer system setup | 145 |
| EZ-Steer system calibrations | 148 |

You can add, edit, save, delete and select vehicles. Part of vehicle setup includes entering settings for auto guidance systems, providing vehicle measurements and calibrating the vehicle with the guidance system.

You must select a vehicle to be able to enter a field.

Vehicle setup

On-screen vehicles in the Precision-IQ field application represent actual vehicles, and include basic information about your vehicle as well as its type of guidance system and calibrations.

Note – Prior to using a vehicle for field activities, you must complete all settings for a vehicle, including calibrations. Then you must select the vehicle.

Vehicles can be:

- Added. See [Add a vehicle \(page 111\)](#).
- Saved in a partial or complete state. See [Save a vehicle \(page 113\)](#).
- Removed. See [Delete a vehicle \(page 112\)](#).
- Changed. See [Edit a vehicle \(page 113\)](#).
- Viewed in a summary form. See [Vehicle summary \(page 114\)](#).
- Selected for use in field activities. See [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#).

Overview of setup

An overview of the steps for setting up a vehicle includes:

1. Selecting the vehicle type and entering basic vehicle information:
 - Guidance type: Manual, Autopilot, EZ-Pilot or EZ-Steer
 - For the Autopilot and EZ-Steer systems, navigation controller orientation: How the controller is oriented in the vehicle
 - For the EZ-Pilot system: How the label is facing on the IMD-600
 - Settings for steering and speed
 - Measurements: Measurements for the location of the antenna and other vehicle measurements
2. Calibrating the guidance system with the vehicle.

Add a vehicle

Note – You must complete all vehicle setup and calibration steps before you can select and use the vehicle for field activities on the **Run** screen.

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.



2. Tap **ADD VEHICLE**. A list of vehicle types displays.



3. Tap the type of vehicle to set up.
4. To enter information about the vehicle's make, model and so on, tap **Next**.

Note – Only vehicles on the current Trimble supported platforms for Autopilot, EZ-Pilot, and EZ-Steer list are in the database. Generic vehicles are selectable for each vehicle type for manual guidance.

| Tap... | To enter or select... |
|---------------------|--|
| Make | Vehicle manufacturer |
| Series | Vehicle series (when applicable) |
| Model | Vehicle model |
| Option | Vehicle options from the manufacturer (Examples: Super Steer, Non Super Steer, ILS, Non-ILS, or ISO CAN Ready) |
| Vehicle Name | The name of the vehicle is pre-filled from the options you chose for Make, Series, and Model. You can optionally change this name if you wish. |

5. Tap **Next**. The SELECTION section displays. The receiver serial number is displayed, indicating the GNSS receiver in the TM-200 Module is receiving signals.

Confirm that this is the proper serial number for the TM-200 Module attached to the Precision-IQ field application. When moving displays between vehicles, this is not automatically updated.

6. Tap **Next**. A list of steering/guidance types displays. The choices will depend on the vehicle:
 - Autopilot
 - EZ-Pilot
 - EZ-Steer
 - Manual Guidance
7. Tap the type of guidance system the vehicle uses.
8. Continue entering settings for the vehicle and guidance system. For instructions, see the section that applies to your guidance system:
 - [Autopilot system setup \(page 117\)](#)
 - [EZ-Pilot system setup \(page 138\)](#)
 - [EZ-Steer system setup \(page 145\)](#)
 - [Manual guidance setup \(page 116\)](#)



WARNING – Auto guidance systems cannot avoid items in the field such as obstacles. Make sure you are adequately trained to operate the auto guidance system.

For instructions on saving the vehicle, see [Save a vehicle \(page 113\)](#).



Delete a vehicle



CAUTION – If you delete a vehicle, all information about the vehicle will be erased.

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.





2. On the left-hand side in the list, tap the name of the vehicle you want to delete.
3. On the right-hand side, tap **Delete**. A confirmation message displays asking you to confirm removal of the vehicle.
4. To delete, tap . You return to the Vehicle setup panel at the **Home** screen.
5. To cancel the deletion, tap .

Edit a vehicle

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.



2. At the VEHICLES list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
3. On the right-hand side, tap **Edit**. The SUMMARY section displays.
4. Navigate to the section(s) where you want to make changes.
5. After you have completed your changes, tap **SUMMARY**.
If you have not completed all the required information, you can save the edits you made. However, you cannot use the vehicle on the **Run** screen.
6. When you are finished, tap **SUMMARY**. Tap  to save your settings.
7. To discard the changes and leave the vehicle setup panel, tap . A message displays, asking if you want to cancel without saving your changes. Tap cancel.

For details on the vehicle summary, see [Vehicle summary \(page 114\)](#).

For information on guidance system types, see the applicable section:

- [Autopilot system setup \(page 117\)](#)
- [EZ-Pilot system setup \(page 138\)](#)
- [EZ-Steer system setup \(page 145\)](#)
- [Manual guidance setup \(page 116\)](#)


Save a vehicle

You can save:

- Complete vehicle settings after reviewing the SUMMARY section. For details on the vehicle summary, see [Vehicle summary \(page 114\)](#).
- Unfinished vehicle settings, then complete the setup later.


If you have not completed all the required information, you can save the edits you made. However, you cannot use the vehicle profile in field activities on the **Run** screen.

Save a complete vehicle profile

1. Complete all vehicle settings, including calibration.
2. At the SUMMARY section, tap . The display saves the vehicle and returns to the Vehicle setup panel.



Save an incomplete vehicle profile

Note – You must complete all vehicle setup and calibration steps before you can use the vehicle for field activities on the **Run** screen.

1. At a minimum, enter some basic information: vehicle type, make and model.
2. At the SUMMARY section, tap . The display saves the vehicle and returns to the Vehicle setup panel at the **Home** screen.

Vehicle summary



The SUMMARY section of a vehicle profile contains the vehicle information and configurations. Incomplete information will be noted as "Incomplete".

| To... | Tap... |
|--|--|
| Save the vehicle with any changes you have made. |  |
| Exit the setup without saving changes. The display will ask you to either save the changes or exit without saving. |  on the System bar (page 40) |
| Quickly access any part of the setup. | The buttons at the top of the screen |


Select a vehicle

Before you can calibrate a vehicle or enter the **Run** screen, you must select the vehicle you want to use for field activities.

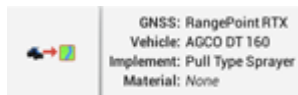
Note – You can only enter the **Run** screen with a vehicle that has had vehicle setup and calibration steps completed.

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
2. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to select. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
3. To select the vehicle before performing field activities at the **Run** screen, tap **Select**. The name of the vehicle highlights in blue and the  indicates which vehicle you chose.




Note – Without a blue highlight, the  indicates a vehicle that was selected previously.

4. The display indicates in the lower left-hand portion of the screen which vehicle is selected for field activities.



Manual guidance setup

1. Navigate to the GUIDANCE section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - c. Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
2. Tap **Selection**, then tap **Manual Guidance**.

Autopilot system setup


Settings for the Autopilot system include:

- The type of platform for the Autopilot system
- The origin of the vehicle profile
- Controller and sensor settings
- Vehicle measurements
- Calibrations


Guidance system settings for Autopilot system



WARNING – Auto guidance systems cannot avoid items in the field such as obstacles. Make sure you are adequately trained to operate the auto guidance system.

1. Navigate to the GUIDANCE section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - c. Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
2. At the SELECTIONS section, complete the settings:

| Tap... | Explanation |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Selection | Autopilot |
| Autopilot Platform | The appropriate platform for your vehicle. |
| Vehicle Profile Origin | <p>The source of the vehicle profile:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vehicle Profiles Database: contained in the display • Import from Navigation controller: If your navigation controller has already been set up for a different Trimble display, the vehicle profile is stored in the controller. • Import from USB: profile stored on USB drive (These configuration /.cfg files are located in the AgData/Profiles folder on the USB drive.) See USB VDB |

| Tap... | Explanation |
|---|--|
|  | transfer (page 59) . <hr/> CAUTION – If you select a <i>Vehicle Profile</i> that is not suitable for your vehicle, you may experience degraded system performance. |
| GNSS Setup Selection | If you have not completed GNSS setup. See GNSS receiver settings (page 84) . |
| Configure GNSS | Setup GNSS if you have not already done so. |



WARNING – Many large and sudden changes in satellite geometry caused by blocked satellites can cause significant position shifts. If operating under these conditions, auto-guidance systems can react abruptly. To avoid possible personal injury or damage to property under these conditions, disable the auto-guidance system and take manual control of the vehicle until conditions have cleared.


3. Tap **Next** to continue to [Controller settings for Autopilot system \(page 118\)](#).

Controller settings for Autopilot system

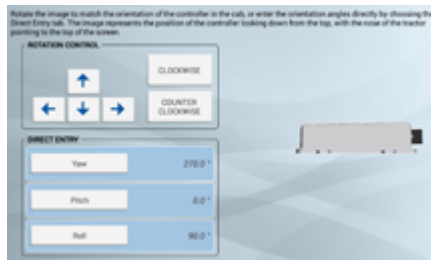
The navigation controller indicates to the Precision-IQ field application how your vehicle is positioned. To set up the controller, you must indicate the position/orientation of the controller as it is currently installed in the vehicle.

For example, if the controller is positioned with the input jacks of the controller facing to the left side of your vehicle, you indicate this in the Precision-IQ field application.

The CONTROLLER SETTINGS section of the vehicle setup panel shows an image of the controller as though you are looking down on the vehicle from above, with the front of the vehicle at the top of the screen.

1. Navigate to the GUIDANCE section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. Tap **Edit**.
 - c. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - d. Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
2. Tap **CONTROLLER SETTINGS**.
3. Rotate the on-screen controller to match the position of the actual controller in the vehicle as you are looking down from the top, with the nose of the tractor point to the top of the screen.


Tap the arrow buttons to move the on-screen navigation controller clockwise or counterclockwise.



4. Optionally you can directly enter the degrees of the position by tapping **Yaw**, **Pitch** and **Roll**. Non-orthogonal entries will not show the orientation on the display.
5. When the controller position on the screen matches the controller installed in the vehicle, continue to the sensor settings. See [Sensor settings for Autopilot system \(page 119\)](#).

Sensor settings for Autopilot system

Note – Adjust sensor settings only if necessary to improve steering performance.

1. Navigate to the **GUIDANCE** section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. Tap **Edit**.
 - c. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - d. Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
2. Tap **SETTINGS**. Complete the information at the SETTINGS section.

Note – Not all setting items will be available for all vehicles. Setting items are only available to the applicable vehicle types.


| Tap... | To... |
|-----------------------|--|
| Steering Sensor | Select the type of angle sensor installed on the vehicle: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Potentiometer AutoSense™ device |
| AutoSense Location | Select the location of the AutoSense device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Left Wheel Right Wheel |
| AutoSense Orientation | Indicate the direction the AutoSense label is facing: |

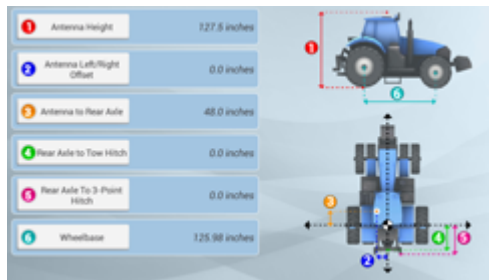
| Tap... | To... |
|----------------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Label Up • Label Down <p>Note – If the orientation is not accurate, assisted steering may be affected.</p> |
| Valve On Speed | <p>Select speed. For vehicles operating at very slow speeds, select Low or Ultra Low.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal - 1.3 ft/s (0.4 m/s) • Low - 0.3 ft/s (0.1 m/s) • Ultra Low - 0.07 ft/s (0.02 m/s) |

Vehicle measurements for Autopilot system

Note – For Autopilot guidance with untracked or tracked vehicles, **do not** change vehicle measurements unless they are not correct.

At MEASUREMENTS, you can enter and access the measurements that apply to the vehicle type you selected. In addition to measurements of the vehicle itself, measurements related to the antenna location are important for accuracy.

- Before you take measurements:
 - Park the vehicle on level ground.
 - Make sure the vehicle is straight, with the center line of the body parallel to the wheels.
- Navigate to the MEASUREMENTS section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - Tap **Edit**.
 - At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
- Tap **MEASUREMENTS**. Based on your selections up to this point, some measurements will be pre-filled.

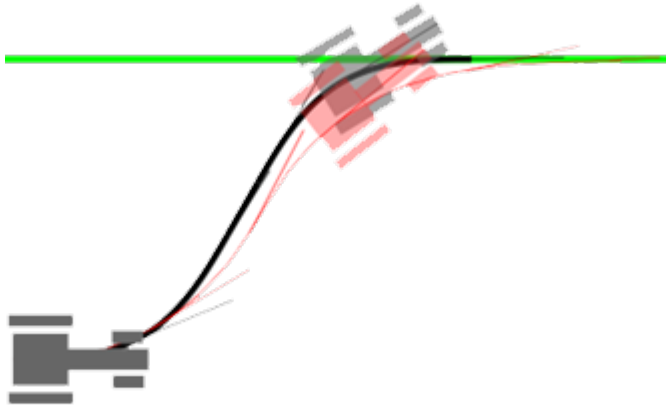


4. Confirm all pre-filled measurements and enter the others.

For the Antenna Height, measure the distance from the ground to the base of the GPS receiver (or antenna).

OnSwath

With OnSwath™, you can customize line acquisition to the vehicle, operation and operator preference. Vehicle behavior during line acquisition is more controlled, more predictable, and more repeatable.



The benefits of OnSwath include:

- Up to 50% faster line acquisition
- Separate tuning for online and line acquisition
- More repeatable performance
- Consistent performance over entire speed range.
- Cab shake eliminated on articulated machines
- Limited turn rates reduce impact on field for tracked machines
- Front axle/nose overshoots more, so that the
- Rear axle on the guidance line faster due to front axle/nose overshooting more

To set up and use OnSwath, see the *Autopilot Toolbox II Guide* and complete calibrations.

OnSwath requires:

- Autopilot firmware 6 and higher
- Autopilot Toolbox II version 3 or higher


Autopilot system calibration

The calibration process for the Autopilot system records additional details about your vehicle, which helps the system to steer the vehicle more accurately. For high accuracy systems, you must have all the correct calibrations.

Note – Currently CAT hydraulic installation Challenger vehicles and John Deere Tracked vehicles using the SIU-200 Interface box cannot be calibrated with the Precision-IQ field application.

The CALIBRATION section lists only the calibrations required for the selected vehicle and steering system.

Note – Calibration is only complete when all calibrations on the screen show results instead of Incomplete. Prior to performing calibrations ensure you completed the steps to [Controller settings for Autopilot system \(page 118\)](#).

1. Remove any implement from the vehicle. Drive the vehicle to an open area free of obstacles in which the vehicle can make long passes (400m/.25 mile).
2. At the Vehicle setup panel, select the vehicle you want to work with. See for detailed instructions.
3. Tap **Calibrate**. The display shows **only** the calibrations required for the vehicle you have selected.
4. Perform each of the calibration procedure selections presented. Following the on-screen instructions when applicable. More detailed information on each calibration follows.
5. When you are finished, tap  to save the calibrations.

Calibration for non-tracked vehicles

| Calibration | Explanation |
|--|--|
| Manual override sensitivity calibration (page 124) Note – For vehicles that use a pressure transducer or column encoder for the manual override. | Adjusts how much force is required to disengage the system when the driver turns the steering wheel. Note – The system detects whether the vehicle configuration includes this type of sensor. This option only appears if required. |
| Automated steering deadzone calibration (page 126) Note – Only for front wheel steered and articulated vehicles. | For learning the vehicle's steering dead zones. Determines the minimum valve command required for steering movement. |
| Proportional steering gain (page 131) | Sets the proportional gain to control steering overshoot and responsiveness. |

| Calibration | Explanation |
|---|--|
| Steering sensor calibration (page 125) <i>Note – Only for vehicles with a potentiometer style steering sensor.</i> | Converts the voltage output of the steering angle sensor into an equivalent steering angle measurement. |
| Line acquisition (page 136) | Controls how fast the guidance system attempts to steer the vehicle onto the current guidance line (50% - 150%). |
| Engage aggressiveness (page 137) | How aggressively the vehicle initially engages on the guidance line (50% - 150%). |
| Roll correction calibration (page 132) | Compensates for minor variations in the placement of the navigation controller and GNSS antenna. |

Also see [Autopilot system diagnostics \(page 270\)](#).

Manual override sensitivity calibration



WARNING – Incorrect adjustment of *Manual Override Sensitivity* could cause this critical safety feature to fail, resulting in personal injury or damage to the vehicle. Do not choose a setting that is either too sensitive or not sensitive enough. It is vital to avoid setting the sensitivity so low that the system will not detect any steering wheel motion.

Note – This control is for platforms that use a pressure transducer or encoder for manual override. The software detects whether or not the system uses this type of sensor.


One way to disengage the Autopilot system is to turn the steering wheel or manually override automatic steering. When you turn the steering wheel, there is a voltage spike that then tapers off. This spike and decline occurs at different levels for different models of tractor.

Manual Override Sensitivity sets the level that the voltage must reach before the guidance system disengages. The voltage must also drop below that level before automated steering can be engaged again.

A high level of sensitivity causes the system to disengage more quickly, and you must wait longer before you can re-engage. A low level of sensitivity causes the system to take longer to disengage, and you will be able to re-engage more quickly.

1. At the Vehicle setup panel, select the vehicle you want to work with. See [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#) for detailed instructions.
2. Tap **Calibrate**.
3. Tap **Manual Override Sensitivity**. The system displays the calibration tool.




4. Turn the steering wheel. If the threshold is crossed, the steering wheel will change color.
5. If the disengage response is acceptable, tap  and then perform the next calibration.
6. If the response is **not** acceptable, and:
 - a. The system disengages too easily, move the slider bar to the right to increase the value and decrease the sensitivity.
 - b. The system seems hard to disengage, move the slider bar to the left to decrease the value and increase the sensitivity.

Note – The default setting provides a balance between rapid activation of the override function and rejection of steering wheel motion due to incidental contact (for example, due to travel in a rough field).

 - c. Repeat steps 4 and 5 until the disengage response is acceptable.



Tip – Evaluate *Manual Override Sensitivity* under conditions which may affect the pressure of the hydraulic system. For example, turn on the auxiliary hydraulics while you evaluate the sensitivity.

7. Tap  to exit without saving. The display returns to the CALIBRATION section where you can perform another calibration or exit.

Steering sensor calibration

Steering sensor calibration converts the voltage output of the steering angle sensor into an equivalent steering angle measurement.


Note – *Steering sensor calibration is only for platforms with a rotary potentiometer installed.*

Note – Complete this calibration before you attempt the [Automated steering deadzone calibration \(page 126\)](#) or [Roll correction calibration \(page 132\)](#) calibrations.

1. Drive the vehicle to a field with a hard, level surface without obstructions.
2. At the Vehicle setup panel, select the vehicle you want to work with. See [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#) for detailed instructions.
3. Tap **Calibrate**.
4. Tap **Steering Sensor**. The calibration tool displays.
5. Read the instructions and tap the **Next**.

6. Steer straight ahead and drive forward slowly. Maintain a tractor speed above 1.6 kph (1 mph). Tap **Next**.
7. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the left and continue moving forward.
 - a. Note the sensor voltage value.
 - b. While the steering wheel is at the full left position, tap **Next**.
8. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the right.
 - a. Note the sensor voltage value.
 - b. While the steering wheel is at the full right position, tap **Next**.
9. Steer straight ahead and drive for a while to ensure you are traveling straight.
10. Check the value. The center should be approximately 2.5 volts. The calibration process attempts to map the values for a full left turn, a full right turn and center steering.
 - a. Note the sensor voltage value.
 - b. When the vehicle is going straight, press **Next**.
11. Turn the steering wheel to full left and full right.
 - a. Check that the voltage value and degree value does not stop changing before the steering articulation hits the end stops.
 - b. Ensure that the full left turn and the full right turn are at approximately the same value.
 - c. If the values are not approximately symmetrical, tap **X** to discard the calibration and repeat step 6 through step 9. The steering sensor may require adjustment or replacement if:

| The value... | Outcome |
|-----------------|---|
| For sensor volt | Not symmetrical for full left and full right turns |
| For degrees | Not near 0 |
| For voltage | Stops changing before the articulation of the steering is to the full left or full right position |

12. Tap  to accept the calibration.
13. To restart the calibration, tap **Steering Sensor**.

Automated steering deadzone calibration

The *Automated Deadzone* calibration runs a series of tests on the valve and steering hydraulics to determine the steering signal where steering movement occurs. It determines the minimum valve command required for steering movement when you direct the vehicle to turn to the right or left.

In this test, the system independently calibrates both sides of the steering system to determine the point at which wheel movement occurs for each direction.

Note – Large obstacles or terrain variation may cause erratic steering position readings which may degrade the calibration done smooth, level surface recommended for this calibration.



WARNING – During the Deadzone calibration, the system moves the vehicle's steering wheel. To avoid injury, be prepared for sudden vehicle movement.

Pre-calibration steps

Complete these steps **before** you begin calibration:

1. Complete the vehicle profile steps for setup.
2. Warm up the vehicle. The hydraulic fluid must be at normal operating temperature for deadzone calibration.

Note – On some vehicles with large reservoirs, it may take a longer amount of time for the fluid to reach operating level, especially if the implement circuit is lightly loaded. Consult the vehicle documentation to determine if the hydraulic fluid temperature can be shown on a vehicle console.
3. If you perform the deadzone calibration while the system is cold, repeat both the Automated Deadzone and Steering Gain calibrations again when the system is at operating temperature. See [Proportional steering gain \(page 131\)](#).
4. Prepare the steering sensor:
 - a. If the vehicle has an AutoSense device, drive the vehicle in a straight line for at least one minute.
 - b. If the vehicle has a Potentiometer, complete the *Steering Sensor* calibration first. See [Steering sensor calibration \(page 125\)](#).

Calibration steps

1. Drive the vehicle to a large field without hazards or obstructions. The field should have smooth soil that is loose but firm.



CAUTION – Obstacles in the field can cause collisions, which may injure you and damage the vehicle. If an obstacle in the field makes it unsafe to continue the Automated Deadzone calibration, stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel to disengage the system.

- 1) Wait until the Precision-IQ field application prompts you that the phase is ready to begin.
- 2) Look at the screen to determine whether the next phase will require a left or right turn.
- 3) Reposition the vehicle so that the turn will use the space that you have available.
- 4) Tap the button to begin the next phase.

2. At the Vehicle setup panel, select the vehicle profile you want to work with. See [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#) for detailed instructions.

3. On the left-hand side, tap **Calibrate**.
4. Tap **Automated Steering Dead Zone**. The calibration panel displays.
5. Center The steering and tap **Next**.
6. Read each instruction and then tap **Next**.
7. Center the steering on the tractor and move forward in first gear at high RPM for at least five seconds.
8. Tap **Test Right** and continue moving forward while the system performs a coarse right side test.
9. When the test is finished, center the steering again and drive forward for five seconds.
10. Tap **Test Left** and continue moving forward while the system performs a coarse left side test.
11. Tap **Accept** to accept the calibration. The system displays the AutoPilot calibration panel again.
12. Continue driving ahead slowly and tap **Test Right**. The system will perform the first right hand fine calibration.
13. Repeat the right and left hand fine calibrations until there is a change of less than .5 in each of the deadzone values

To minimize the total amount of space needed for the complete calibration, you can reposition the vehicle between each calibration process. If available flate, smooth space is extremely limited, re-align the vehicle after each calibration.

Note – If you encounter any error messages during calibration, refer to the [Automated Deadzone error messages](#) in this section.

Automated Deadzone error messages

| Message: Error - | Explanation |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Manual Override Detected | Manual override was detected before the calibration cycle could be completed. Retry the calibration. |
| No GPS | A GNSS receiver must be connected and outputting positions before the software can run the calibration procedure. |
| No Steering Response Detected | During the calibration cycle, there was not enough movement for the calibration to complete. If the problem persists, the hydraulic installation could be faulty. |
| Software Problem Detected | The software was unable to complete the calibration due to insufficient movement of the vehicle. If the problem persists, contact Technical Support. |
| Steering Close To End Stops | Before the calibration cycle could be completed, the measured steering angle approached the end stops. Retry, and if the problem persists, instead of centering the steering at the start of each cycle, |

| Message: Error - | Explanation |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| | try turning the steering in the opposite direction to that which is being tested so that the calibration procedure has a greater range to test over. |
| Unable To Determine DZ: Try Again | A problem occurred when trying to compute dead zone. Retry. If the problem persists, contact Technical Support. |
| Valve Connectors Could Be Swapped | The calibration test sensed the steering turning in the opposite direction to what was expected. Retry. If the problem persists, either the valve connectors have been accidentally swapped or the steering sensor calibration was performed incorrectly. |
| Vehicle Moving Too Slow | The vehicle was moving too slowly for the calibration cycle to successfully finish. Make sure the vehicle is moving at least 0.8 kph (0.5 mph) during each calibration cycle. |

Calibration steps

1. Drive the vehicle to a large field without hazards or obstructions. The field should have smooth soil that is loose but firm.



CAUTION – Obstacles in the field can cause collisions, which may injure you and damage the vehicle. If an obstacle in the field makes it unsafe to continue the Automated Deadzone calibration, stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel to disengage the system.

- 1) Wait until the Precision-IQ field application prompts you that the phase is ready to begin.
- 2) Look at the screen to determine whether the next phase will require a left or right turn.
- 3) Reposition the vehicle so that the turn will use the space that you have available.
- 4) Tap the button to begin the next phase.

2. At the Vehicle setup panel, select the vehicle profile you want to work with. See [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#) for detailed instructions.
3. On the left-hand side, tap **Calibrate**.
4. Tap **Automated Steering Dead Zone**. The calibration panel displays.
5. Center The steering and tap **Next**.
6. Read each instruction and then tap **Next**.
7. Center the steering on the tractor and move forward in first gear at high RPM for at least five seconds.
8. Tap **Test Right** and continue moving forward while the system performs a coarse right side test.
9. When the test is finished, center the steering again and drive forward for five seconds.
10. Tap **Test Left** and continue moving forward while the system performs a coarse left side test.

11. Tap **Accept** to accept the calibration. The system displays the AutoPilot calibration panel again.
12. Continue driving ahead slowly and tap **Test Right**. The system will perform the first right hand fine calibration.
13. Repeat the right and left hand fine calibrations until there is a change of less than .5 in each of the deadzone values

To minimize the total amount of space needed for the complete calibration, you can reposition the vehicle between each calibration process. If available flat, smooth space is extremely limited, re-align the vehicle after each calibration.

Note – If you encounter any error messages during calibration, refer to the [Automated Deadzone error messages](#) in this section.

Automated Deadzone error messages

| Message: Error - | Explanation |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Manual Override Detected | Manual override was detected before the calibration cycle could be completed. Retry the calibration. |
| No GPS | A GNSS receiver must be connected and outputting positions before the software can run the calibration procedure. |
| No Steering Response Detected | During the calibration cycle, there was not enough movement for the calibration to complete. If the problem persists, the hydraulic installation could be faulty. |
| Software Problem Detected | The software was unable to complete the calibration due to insufficient movement of the vehicle. If the problem persists, contact Technical Support. |
| Steering Close To End Stops | Before the calibration cycle could be completed, the measured steering angle approached the end stops. Retry, and if the problem persists, instead of centering the steering at the start of each cycle, try turning the steering in the opposite direction to that which is being tested so that the calibration procedure has a greater range to test over. |
| Unable To Determine DZ: Try Again | A problem occurred when trying to compute dead zone. Retry. If the problem persists, contact Technical Support. |
| Valve Connectors Could Be Swapped | The calibration test sensed the steering turning in the opposite direction to what was expected. Retry. If the problem persists, either the valve connectors have been accidentally swapped or the steering sensor calibration was performed incorrectly. |
| Vehicle Moving Too Slow | The vehicle was moving too slowly for the calibration cycle to successfully finish. Make sure the vehicle is moving at least 0.8 kph |

| Message: Error - | Explanation |
|-----------------------|--|
| | (0.5 mph) during each calibration cycle. |

Proportional steering gain

Note – Adjust the steering gain only when the Autopilot system performance is less than satisfactory.

Proportional steering gain (PGain) balances rapid steering response and stability. PGain affects the following:

- Slew Time: The amount of time that the front wheels take to move from the far left to the far right position and back.
- Overshoot: The percentage by which the front wheels exceed the commanded angle before they settle on the correct value.

| High Gain | Low Gain |
|---|---|
| Decreases the slew time and increase the overshoot. This provides rapid responses, but can cause the steering to exhibit signs of instability (for example, a tendency to excessively overshoot). | Increases the slew time and decrease the overshoot. This improves the stability but can introduce delays in the steering response and can cause the vehicle to oscillate from side to side. |

Pre-calibration steps

1. Complete the vehicle setup steps.
2. Perform calibration for the Automated Deadzone. See [Automated steering deadzone calibration \(page 126\)](#) before you perform the calibration for steering gain.
3. Drive the vehicle to an open area with a smooth surface.





CAUTION – The wheels can move abruptly during the Steering Proportional Gain procedure while the Autopilot system tests the hydraulic response to its steering commands. To avoid injury, be prepared for vehicle movement.

Calibration steps

1. At the Vehicle setup panel, select the vehicle you want to work with. See [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#).
2. Tap **Calibrate**, then tap **Steering Proportional Gain**. The calibration tool displays.
3. Tap **Run Slew Test**. To proceed with the test, tap **Next**.
4. Drive forward at 1 mph (1.6 kph) or faster. Tap **Next**.

5. Turn the front wheels completely to the right and then tap **Turn Left**. Drive forward while the vehicle turns left, until the screen shows the test is complete.
6. Turn the front wheels completely to the left and then tap **Turn Right**. Drive forward while the vehicle turns right, until the screen shows the test is complete.

Note – With some vehicles, valve size and hydraulic capabilities of the machine will limit the slew time. In such cases, optimizing the P-gain value will be difficult..

7. Note the Slew Time and Overshoot values.
8. Adjust the gain value.
9. Repeat step 3 through step 8 until the Gain is just below the level where any one of the following occurs:
 - Slew times no longer decrease (a low value is required some vehicles too high gain is possible - 1500-2000 milliseconds is ideal).
 - Overshoot exceeds 5 – 8% (depending on the vehicle).
 - Wheels noticeably shake near end stops.
10. When you find the optimum gain, tap  to accept the calibration or  to exit without saving. The display returns to the CALIBRATION section where you can perform another calibration or exit.

Roll correction calibration

Roll correction compensates for minor variations in the placement of the navigation controller and GNSS antenna.

Note – If you use multiple GNSS technologies (for example, RTK and WAAS), then use the device with the highest accuracy when calibrating roll correction. For best results, use RTK, RTX or OmniSTAR HP with a signal that has been converged for at least 20 minutes. If you do a roll calibration with less accurate correction, repeat the steps below at least four times for greater accuracy.

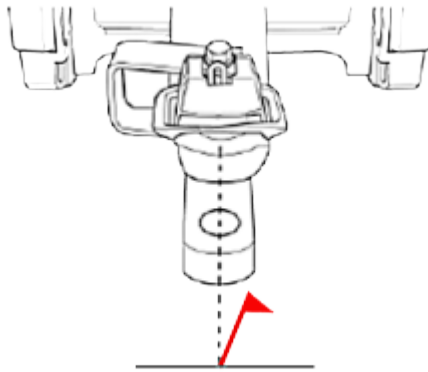
Pre-calibration steps

1. Set up a vehicle and perform all calibrations preceding this one.
2. Read and understand the instructions provided below for the calibration procedure.
3. Remove any implement from the vehicle and drive it to a flat, smooth area where you can complete passes of at least 400 ft (125 m) in length.
4. Create a field. See [Add a field \(page 152\)](#).

Calibration steps

1. Select the vehicle and implement you want to work with.
See [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#) and [Select an implement \(page 159\)](#) for detailed instructions.
2. Select a field and enter the **Run** screen.
See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#) and [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#).
3. Create a new, straight guidance line.
See [AB guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 220\)](#) or [A+ guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 221\)](#).
4. Make sure the on-screen lightbar is displayed on the screen.
See [On-screen widgets \(page 259\)](#).
5. Engage automatic steering on the line. Drive until the on-screen lightbar number is as close to zero as possible, and then stop the vehicle.
6. Mark the vehicle's position:
 - a. Place the vehicle in park and exit the cab.
 - b. Place a flag in the ground that will mark the vehicle's center line. Use the drawbar pin hole or use another feature of the vehicle as a reference point.

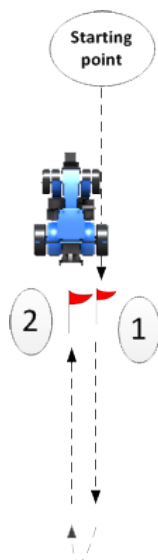
On vehicles such as sprayers, swathers, or combines, determine a reference point in the center of the vehicle to mark (preferably near to the reference location for the antenna such as front axle, rear axle, or center of track rotation).



7. Re-enter the cab and continue to drive down the guidance line.
8. Turn the vehicle around and then re-engage **on the same line** in the opposite direction.
9. Stop the vehicle with the drawbar (or other feature used to mark the center line of the vehicle) as close to the first flag as possible.
10. Mark the vehicle's position.

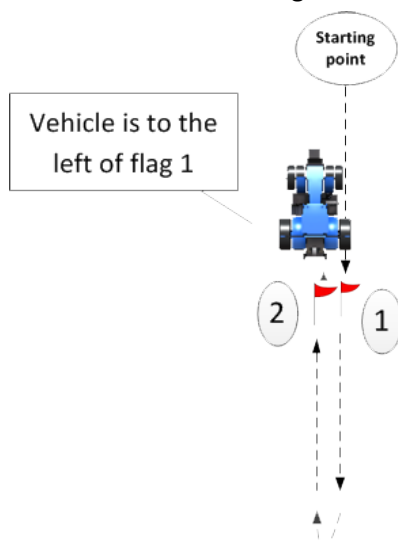
- a. Place the vehicle in park and exit the cab.
- b. Place a second flag in the ground to mark the vehicle's center line.
- c. Measure the distance between flag 1 and flag 2 and note it.

Distance between flag 1 and flag 2 (step c):



- d. Also note where the vehicle's current position is in relation to flag 1 (in other words, the vehicle is either to the right or left of flag 1). The diagram, this example shows the vehicle is to the left of flag 1.

Vehicle is to right or left of flag 2 (step d):




e. Return to the cab and in the **Run** screen note the cross-track error (the number on the on-screen lightbar).

0' 2.00"

Cross-track error (number on Run screen) (step e):

f. Note the direction highlighted on the lightbar (left or right).

Direction highlighted on lightbar (left or right) (step f):

11. Tap  and then tap **Diagnostics**.
12. Tap Autopilot performance and tap the Advanced tab.
13. At the Roll Offset entry box and Vehicle Position selection box:
 - Calculate the roll offset and enter it in the display.
Refer to your notes and compare them to the following table to determine how to calculate roll offset.
 - Determine the direction of the Vehicle Position and enter it on the display.
Refer to your notes and compare them with the following table to find which Vehicle Position to select.

| Current vehicle position is to the ____ of flag 1 | Lightbar highlight is on the: | Calculate Roll Offset value: | Lightbar (cross-track) value is ____ than flag distance value | Vehicle Position selection |
|---|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| Right | Right | Flag distance minus Cross-track value | Less | Right |
| Right | Right | Flag distance minus Cross-track value | Greater | Left |
| Left | Left | Flag distance minus Cross-track value | Less | Left |
| Left | Left | Flag distance minus Cross-track value | Greater | Right |
| Right | Left | Flag distance plus Cross-track value | N/A | Right |
| Left | Right | Flag distance plus Cross-track value | N/A | Left |

14. Pull both flags out of the ground and continue driving down the line.


15. Turn the vehicle around again so that you are traveling in the same direction as you were when you originally set the line.
16. Repeat the steps starting at Step 4 until the two flags are under 1" (2.54 cm) apart.

Line acquisition

Line acquisition controls how fast the guidance system attempts to steer the vehicle onto the current guidance line (50% - 150%).


- With a high setting, the vehicle approaches the line quickly, but may overshoot the line and drive into instability.
- With a low setting, the vehicle steers onto the line more slowly, but is less likely to overshoot the line.

Note – Exceeding the capability of the tractor will cause instability (such as oscillating back and forth up and down the line) during line acquisition.

1. Go to Diagnostics:
 - a. Tap the right side of the display bar. The notification list displays.
 - b. Tap , then tap **Diagnostics**.
 - c. Under the Autopilot heading in the left-hand list, tap **Performance**.
 - d. Tap **Steering** at the top of the screen.
 - e. The display shows the tool for calibrating line approach aggressiveness and the cross-track error diagram.
2. Enter the **Run** screen and engage automatic steering on a straight guidance line.
 - a. At the Vehicle setup panel, select the vehicle and implement you want to work with. See [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#) and [Select an implement \(page 159\)](#) for detailed instructions.
 - b. Select a field and enter the **Run** screen. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#) and [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#).
 - c. Create a new, straight guidance line. See [AB guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 220\)](#) or [A+ guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 221\)](#).
3. Drive until the lightbar shows that the cross-track error value is as close to zero as possible, and then stop the vehicle.
4. Open the Diagnostics section for Autopilot performance again.
5. Evaluate the current accuracy of the vehicle during line acquisition with the default setting.
6. Touch and move the button with the percentage to move the slider to the left or right. Drive forward and re-engage auto-steering if necessary to test the setting.

Engage aggressiveness

Engage aggressiveness controls how aggressively the vehicle initially turns towards the guidance line.

- With a high setting, the vehicle will initially respond quickly.
 - With low setting, the vehicle will respond more smoothly when initially engaged.
1. Enter the **Run** screen and engage automatic steering on a straight guidance line. See [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#) for more instructions on entering the **Run** screen.
 2. Drive the vehicle approximately 10 seconds.
 3. Open the Diagnostics section for the Autopilot system's performance.
 - a. Tap the right side of the display bar. The notification list displays.
 - b. Tap , then tap **Diagnostics**.
 - c. Tap **Steering** at the top of the screen.
 4. Evaluate the current accuracy of the vehicle during line acquisition with the default setting .
 5. Touch and move the button with the percentage to move the slider to the left or right. Drive forward and re-engage auto-steering if necessary to test the setting.

EZ-Pilot system setup

The EZ-Pilot system turns the steering wheel for you with an electric motor drive. It uses GNSS guidance from the Precision-IQ field application.


Initial setup steps are:

- [Guidance selection for the EZ-Pilot system \(page 138\)](#)
- [Controller settings for EZ-Pilot system \(page 138\)](#)
- [Vehicle measurements for EZ-Pilot system \(page 140\)](#)
- [Steering speed settings for EZ-Pilot system \(page 139\)](#)

Guidance selection for the EZ-Pilot system



WARNING – Auto guidance systems cannot avoid items in the field such as obstacles. Make sure you are adequately trained to operate the auto guidance system.

1. Navigate to the **GUIDANCE** section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - c. Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
2. At the SELECTION section, tap EZ-Pilot.



WARNING – Many large and sudden changes in satellite geometry caused by blocked satellites can cause significant position shifts. If operating under these conditions, auto-guidance systems can react abruptly. To avoid possible personal injury or damage to property under these conditions, disable the auto-guidance system and take manual control of the vehicle until conditions have cleared.

3. Tap **Next** to set up the controller orientation. See [Controller settings for EZ-Pilot system \(page 138\)](#).


Controller settings for EZ-Pilot system

The EZ-Pilot system uses the IMD-600 to provide roll compensation when the vehicle is on a slope or drives over a bump. For roll compensation to work correctly, the IMD-600 must be calibrated. IMD stands for Inertial Measurement Device.

To set up the IMD-600 controller, you must indicate the position/orientation of the controller as it is currently installed in the vehicle.

For example, if the controller is positioned with the input jacks of the controller facing to the left side of your vehicle, you indicate this in the Precision-IQ field application.


The CONTROLLER SETTINGS section of the vehicle setup panel shows an image of the controller as though you are looking down on the vehicle from above, with the front of the vehicle at the top of the screen.

1. Navigate to the **GUIDANCE** section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. Tap **Edit**.
 - c. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - d. Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
2. Tap **CONTROLLER SETTINGS**.
3. Rotate the on-screen IMD-600 to match the position of the actual IMD-600 in the vehicle as you are looking down from the top, with the nose of the tractor point to the top of the screen. Tap the arrow buttons to move the on-screen IMD-600 clockwise or counterclockwise.



Steering speed settings for EZ-Pilot system

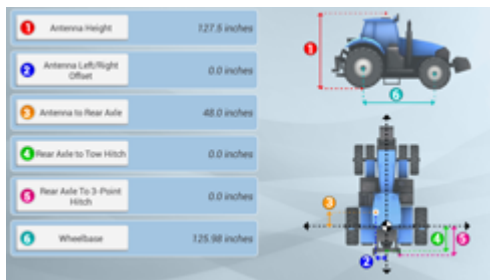
Note – Adjust settings only if necessary to improve steering performance.

1. Navigate to the **GUIDANCE** section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - c. Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
2. Tap **SETTINGS**. Complete the information at the **SETTINGS** section.

| Setting | Explanation |
|-----------------|--|
| Angle per Turn | <p>The angle that the wheels turn during one full rotation of the steering wheel (1 - 150 degrees):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Too high - the system turns the wheel too little and the vehicle will not hold the line • Too low - results in small, fast oscillations in steering <p>Note – Angle per Turn should be determined by running the automated calibration. The value can then be adjusted here.</p> |
| Freeplay Left | The amount of free movement in the steering when starting a left turn (0 - 11.9 inches / 0 - 30 cm) |
| Freeplay Right | The amount of free movement in the steering when starting a right turn (0 - 11.9 inches / 0 - 30 cm) |
| Steering Delay | <p>The amount of time between steering wheel movement and vehicle yaw rate change (0.1 - 2 seconds).</p> <p>Note – This setting should only be used for swathers and sprayers.</p> |
| Motor Speed | <p>The speed at which the motor will operate: Auto, Auto High, Auto Low, Auto Maximum, Auto Medium, High, Low, Maximum, Medium</p> <p>Note – Default selection varies depending on vehicle type.</p> |
| Motor Direction | Reverse mount, standard mount |
| External Switch | Select a switching option if an external switch is connected to the system: Disabled (Default), Remote Engage, Seat Disengage, Seat Engage Only |
| Engage Options | Maximum Speed, Minimum Speed, Maximum Angle, Engage Offline, Disengage Offline Override Sensors |
| Advanced | <p>Note – Do not adjust the Advanced Settings. Advance Settings are provided for support and advanced troubleshooting only.</p> <p>Settings include: Roll Offset Angle, Estimated Steering Angle Bias, Dynamic Approach Angle, Steering Acceleration Limit, Steering Slew Limit</p> |

Vehicle measurements for EZ-Pilot system

At MEASUREMENTS, the measurements that apply to the vehicle type you selected are shown in this section. In addition to measurements of the vehicle itself, measurements related to the antenna location are important for accuracy.



To edit measurements, tap each measurement button and enter the appropriate number.

Before you take measurements:

- Park the vehicle on level ground.
- Make sure the vehicle is straight, with the center line of the body parallel to the wheels.


EZ-Pilot system calibrations



Calibrations for the EZ-Pilot guidance system are:

- [Angle per turn calibration for EZ-Pilot system \(page 142\)](#)
- [Roll correction for EZ-Pilot system \(page 141\)](#)
- [Online aggressiveness calibration for EZ-Pilot system \(page 142\)](#)
- [Line acquisition calibration for EZ-Pilot system \(page 143\)](#)

Also see [EZ-Pilot system diagnostics \(page 277\)](#).


Roll correction for EZ-Pilot system

1. Park the vehicle and mark the center lines of both the front and rear wheelbases on the ground.
2. Navigate to the GUIDANCE section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to calibrate. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
3. Tap **Calibrate**.
4. Tap **Roll Calibration**. The calibration tool displays.
5. Follow the instructions on the calibration tool.

6. To accept the calibration, tap .
7. To discard the calibration and start it again, tap .


Angle per turn calibration for EZ-Pilot system

Note – Complete the roll correction calibration before performing this calibration.

1. Navigate to the GUIDANCE section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to calibrate. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
2. Tap **Calibrate**.
3. Tap **Angle Per Turn**. The calibration tool displays.
4. Follow the steps on the calibration tool.

Online aggressiveness calibration for EZ-Pilot system

Online aggressiveness controls how aggressively the vehicle reacts to cross track error while operating on the guidance line (50% - 150%).


- With a high setting, the vehicle will be more reactive to cross track error. A high setting may cause the system to overreact and become unstable.
 - With low setting, the vehicle will make less of a steering correction to the online cross track error.
1. Enter the **Run** screen and engage automatic steering on a straight guidance line. See [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#) for more instructions on entering the **Run** screen.
 2. Drive the vehicle approximately 10 seconds.
 3. Open the Diagnostics section for the EZ-Pilot system's performance.
 - a. Tap the right side of the display bar. The notification list displays.
 - b. Tap , then tap **Diagnostics**.
 - c. Tap **Steering** at the top of the screen.
 4. Evaluate the current accuracy of the vehicle during online operation with the default setting .
 5. Touch and move the button with the percentage to move the slider to the left or right. Drive forward and re-engage auto-steering if necessary to test the setting.

Line acquisition calibration for EZ-Pilot system

Line acquisition controls how fast the guidance system attempts to steer the vehicle onto the current guidance line (50% - 150%).

- With a high setting, the vehicle approaches the line quickly, but may overshoot the line and drive itself to instability.
- With a low setting, the vehicle steers onto the line more slowly, but is less likely to overshoot the line.

Note – Exceeding the capability of the tractor will cause instability (such as oscillating back and forth up and down the line) during line acquisition.

1. Go to Diagnostics:
 - a. Tap the right side of the display bar. The notification list displays.
 - b. Tap , then tap **Diagnostics**.
 - c. Under the EZ-Pilot heading in the left-hand list, tap **Performance**.
 - d. Tap **Steering** at the top of the screen.
 - e. The display shows the adjustments for calibrating line approach aggressiveness and the cross-track error diagram.
2. Enter the **Run** screen and engage automatic steering on a straight guidance line.
 - a. At the Vehicle setup panel, select the vehicle and implement you want to work with. See [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#) and [Select an implement \(page 159\)](#) for detailed instructions.)
 - b. Select a field and enter the **Run** screen. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#) and [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#).
 - c. Create a new, straight guidance line. See [AB guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 220\)](#) or [A+ guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 221\)](#).
3. Drive until the lightbar shows that the cross-track error value is as close to zero as possible, and then stop the vehicle.
4. Open the Diagnostics section for Autopilot performance again.
5. Evaluate the current accuracy of the vehicle during line acquisition with the default setting.
6. Touch and move the button with the percentage to move the slider to the left or right. Drive forward and re-engage auto-steering if necessary to test the setting.
7. Drive until the lightbar shows that the cross-track error value is as close to zero as possible, and then stop the vehicle.
8. Open the Diagnostics section for EZ-Pilot performance again.
9. Evaluate the current accuracy of the vehicle during line acquisition with the default setting.

10. Touch and move the button with the percentage to move the slider to the left or right. Drive forward and re-engage auto-steering if necessary to test the setting.


EZ-Steer system setup


The EZ-Steer system turns the steering wheel for you by combining a friction wheel and a motor with guidance from the Precision-IQ field application.


Initial setup steps are:

- [Guidance selection for EZ-Steer system \(page 145\)](#)
- [Controller settings for EZ-Steer system \(page 145\)](#)
- [Steering and speed settings for EZ-Steer system \(page 146\)](#)
- [Vehicle measurements for EZ-Steer system \(page 147\)](#)

Guidance selection for EZ-Steer system

 **WARNING** – Auto guidance systems cannot avoid items in the field such as obstacles. Make sure you are adequately trained to operate the auto guidance system.

1. Navigate to the **GUIDANCE** section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - c. Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
2. At the SELECTIONS section, tap **Selection** and then tap EZ-Steering.

 **WARNING** – Many large and sudden changes in satellite geometry caused by blocked satellites can cause significant position shifts. If operating under these conditions, auto-guidance systems can react abruptly. To avoid possible personal injury or damage to property under these conditions, disable the auto-guidance system and take manual control of the vehicle until conditions have cleared.


3. Tap **Next** to set up the controller orientation. See [Controller settings for EZ-Steer system \(page 145\)](#).

Controller settings for EZ-Steer system

| Setting | Explanation |
|-----------------|---|
| Connector Faces | Indicate how the connector on the navigation controller faces: Back, Floor, Front |

Steering and speed settings for EZ-Steer system

Note – Adjust settings only if necessary to improve steering performance.

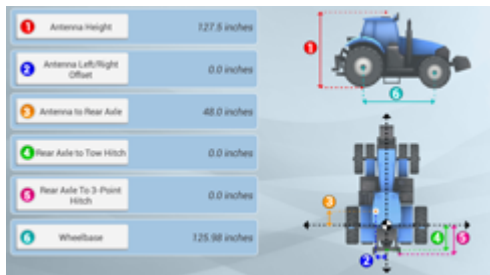
1. Navigate to the GUIDANCE section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to edit. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text
 - c. Tap **Edit**, then **GUIDANCE**.
2. Tap **SETTINGS**. Complete the information at the SETTINGS section.

| Steering Sensor Setting | Description |
|--|--|
| Angle per Turn | <p>The angle that the wheels turn during one full rotation of the steering wheel (1 - 150 degrees):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Too high - the system turns the wheel too little and the vehicle will not hold the line • Too low - results in small, fast oscillations in steering <p>Angle per turn values should be calibrated first using EZ-Steer calibration and then adjusted here if necessary.</p> |
| Freeplay Left | The amount of free movement in the steering when starting a left turn (0 - 11.9 inches / 0 - 30 cm) |
| Freeplay Right | The amount of free movement in the steering when starting a right turn (0 - 11.9 inches / 0 - 30 cm) |
| Steering Delay Note – Only available if vehicle is sprayer or swather. | <p>The amount of time between steering wheel movement and vehicle yaw rate change (0.1-1.5 seconds)</p> <p>Note – This value should only be used for swathers and sprayers.</p> |
| Motor Speed | <p>The speed at which the motor will operate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Auto, Auto Low, Auto Medium, Auto High, or Auto Maximum</i> • <i>Manual Low, Manual Medium (Default), Manual High, or Manual Maximum</i> <p>Note – Auto mode determines the proper speed for the steering action required.</p> |
| Motor Direction | <p>The direction the EZ-Steer system motor is installed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard Mount |

| Steering Sensor Setting | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reversed Mount |
| External Switch | Select a switching option if an external switch is connected to the system: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disabled (Default) Seat Disengage Seat Engage Only Remote Engage |
| Advanced | <i>Advanced settings include:</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Roll OffsetAngle Estimated Steering Angle Bias Dynamic Approach Angle Steering acceleration limit Steering slew limit <p>Note – Do not adjust the Advanced Settings. Advance Settings are provided for support and advanced troubleshooting only.</p> |

Vehicle measurements for EZ-Steer system

At MEASUREMENTS, you can enter and access the measurements that apply to the vehicle type you selected. In addition to measurements of the vehicle itself, measurements related to the antenna location are important for accuracy.



To enter measurements, tap each measurement button and enter the appropriate number.

Before you take measurements:

- Park the vehicle on level ground.
- Make sure the vehicle is straight, with the center line of the body parallel to the wheels.

For the Antenna Height, measure the distance from the ground to the base of the GPS receiver (or antenna).




EZ-Steer system calibrations

Calibrations for the EZ-Steer auto guidance system include:

- [Angle per turn calibration for EZ-Steer system \(page 148\)](#)
- [Roll correction for EZ-Steer system \(page 148\)](#)


Also see [EZ-Steer system diagnostics \(page 282\)](#).

Roll correction for EZ-Steer system

1. Park the vehicle and mark the center lines of both the front and rear wheelbases on the ground.
2. Navigate to the GUIDANCE section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to calibrate. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
3. Tap **Calibrate**.
4. Tap **Roll Calibration**. The calibration tool displays.
5. Follow the instructions on the calibration tool.
6. To accept the calibration, tap .
7. To discard the calibration and start it again, tap .

Angle per turn calibration for EZ-Steer system

Perform the Roll calibration before performing the angle per turn calibration.

1. Navigate to the GUIDANCE section of the vehicle setup panel:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to calibrate. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
2. Tap **Calibrate**.
3. Tap **Angle Per Turn**. The calibration wizard displays.
4. Begin the steps on the calibration procedure by driving the vehicle between 2 and 4 mph.

Fields

In this chapter:

| | |
|---|------------|
| Field Basics | 150 |
| Add a field | 152 |
| Select a field | 153 |
| Enter a field (Run screen) | 154 |
| Edit a field (Field Manager) | 155 |

You can create multiple fields and then select one to enter. Using the Field Manager, you can also edit and delete fields.

Field Basics

A field is an item you create in the **Run** screen that represents an area of land. A field can contain one or more boundaries (perimeters) (or no boundaries). Information associated with each field includes:

- Boundaries, guidance lines and patterns for steering assistance
- Landmarks such as points, lines and area features
- Tasks
- Coverage information recorded during field activities when logging is activated
- Attributes such as Clients and Farms

To edit and refine boundaries, guidance lines and patterns, and landmarks, open the [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#).

Boundaries

The perimeter around your field is a boundary. A boundary line begins when you tap a button to record the start of your boundary. After driving the length of the boundary, you tap a button to stop recording the path of the boundary. For more information, see [Boundary creation \(Run screen\) \(page 217\)](#) and [Boundary editing \(Field Manager\) \(page 218\)](#).

Guidance lines and patterns

With a steering assistance feature, your vehicle can be set to drive on guidance lines and patterns. This improves the accuracy of planting, applications and harvesting. The types of lines are:

- **AB line:** A straight line that begins at point A. After driving the direction of the line path, you end the line at point B. See [AB guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 220\)](#).
- **A+ line:** A straight line that you begin with point A and choose the direction you want the line to draw.
- **Curve:** A curved line begins when you tap a button to start recording the line path and then drive in a curved direction. The line ends when you tap a button to stop recording the line path. See [Curved line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 222\)](#).

The types of patterns are:

- **Headlands:** An area you can create by recording your beginning point and stopping the recording when you are finished. You have the option to create an infill pattern of straight or curved lines. See [Headland and infill pattern creation \(Run screen\) \(page 223\)](#).
- **Pivots:** A circular area you create by recording your beginning point and stopping recording when you are finished. See [Pivot pattern creation \(Run screen\) \(page 230\)](#).

Landmarks

You create landmarks to indicate productive and non-productive areas, as well as items that you want the display to warn the driver about. Landmarks can be:

- Lines
- Points
- Areas

For more information, see

- [Landmark line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 236\)](#)
- [Landmark point creation \(Run screen\) \(page 236\)](#)
- [Landmark area creation \(Run screen\) \(page 237\)](#)
- [Landmark editing \(Field Manager\) \(page 238\)](#)

Tasks, activities and coverage

A task is a set of information that includes:



- One or more activities being completed in a field (such as planting, spraying, and so on)
- A map layer showing the activity's coverage on the field

The Precision-IQ field application stores field activities related to each unique operation and field combination together as a task. By using tasks, you do not have to continually configure fields that you frequently use.

For more information, see:

- [Tasks \(page 206\)](#)
- [Coverage logging \(page 209\)](#)

Add a field

1. At the **Home** screen, tap .
 2. Enter a name for the field and then tap .
- The system saves the field name and its location.

To work with the field, see [Preparing for operation \(page 202\)](#).


Select a field

To work with a field to work within it, you select it. When you add a field, it is selected automatically.

If you have multiple fields, you can select a field from:



- The point on the map at the **Home** screen.
- The list of fields.

Select a field through the map

The points on the map () of the **Home** screen indicate fields you have created. Tap the point that represents the field.

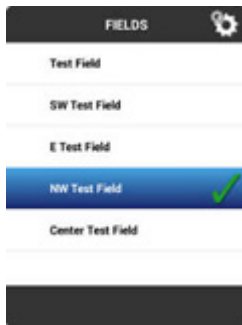
Select a field from the list

The outlines on the map of the **Home** screen indicate fields you have created.

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . A list of fields you previously created displays.
2. To reduce the number of fields in the list, tap . A filter tool displays, showing the client name and the farms associated with the client.



3. Deselect (uncheck) the options you do not want to see and tap **Accept**. The Fields list now shows fields associated with the client and/or farm that you left checked.
4. Tap the name of the field to select it.



Note – A field that has a check mark but is **NOT** highlighted is a previously selected field.

Enter a field (*Run* screen)




Before you can enter a field in the **Run** screen, you must:

- Set up a positioning service that is working. See [GNSS receiver settings \(page 84\)](#).
- Set up a vehicle. See [Vehicle setup \(page 110\)](#).
- [Select a vehicle \(page 115\)](#)
- [Implement setup \(page 158\)](#).
- [Select an implement \(page 159\)](#).
- [Add a field \(page 152\)](#).
- [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).

Choose a field to enter



You can enter a field you currently have selected or one that is not currently selected.

Currently selected field

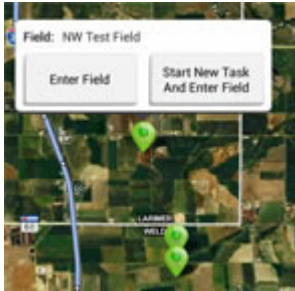
To enter a field that is currently selected, tap   . The **Run** screen displays.

Field not currently selected

To enter a field not currently selected:

1. At the **Home** screen, the map shows points () where your fields are located. Tap the  that represents the field you want to enter. (For a map to display on the **Home** screen, you must have a updated GNSS connection.).

2. A popup displays with the field name and two buttons.




3. To enter the field without beginning a new task, tap **Enter Field**.
4. To start a new task, tap **Start New Task and Enter Field**. The **Run** screen displays.

Run screen

The text and buttons displayed on your **Run** screen depend on:

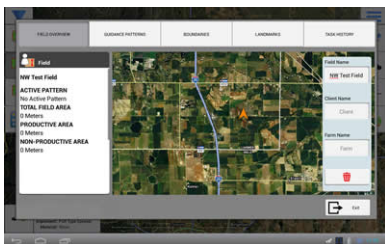
- Whether you are using a guidance / steering system or manual guidance
- Other features you are using
- How your Precision-IQ field application is set up


Edit a field (Field Manager)


1. Tap  to open the Field Manager. Field Manager opens to the Field Overview section.

The map in the Field Manager shows the selected field with details, including:

- Current vehicle position
- Active pattern
- Active boundary
- Inactive boundaries



| Field Item | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Field Name | You can optionally change the field name. Tap in the text box. |
| Client Name (optional) | The client is the customer for whom the work is being done. Client name is blank unless you import it or manually enter it here. |
| Farm Name (optional) | The farm is a collection of fields. Farm name is blank unless you import it or manually enter it here. |
|  | Removes the field and all related data from the Precision-IQ field application. |
| ACTIVE PATTERN | The currently active pattern, and what implement type and width were used to create the pattern. To make a different pattern active, tap GUIDANCE PATTERNS . |
| TOTAL FIELD AREA | The calculated area of the selected field. |
| PRODUCTIVE AREA | Total field area minus the non-productive area. |
| NON-PRODUCTIVE AREA | The calculated area of the Non-productive area landmark features in the selected field. |

- To edit the field name, tap in the Field Name text box and edit the name.
Note – To ensure your changes are saved, tap the Done key on the on-screen keyboard.
- To associate the field to a client, tap the Client name text box and enter a name.
Note – To ensure your changes are saved, tap the Done key on the on-screen keyboard.
- To associate the field to a farm, tap the Farm Name text box and enter the name of the farm.
Note – To ensure your changes are saved, tap the Done key on the on-screen keyboard.
- To edit guidance patterns, boundaries, survey items, or landmarks, tap the buttons at the top of the Field Manager. See the following sections for details.
 - [Guidance pattern shifting \(Field Manager\) \(page 234\)](#)
 - [Boundary editing \(Field Manager\) \(page 218\)](#)
 - [Landmark editing \(Field Manager\) \(page 238\)](#)
- Tap  to save the changes and close the Field Manager.

Implements

In this chapter:

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Implement setup | 158 |
| ISOBUS for implements | 161 |
| Application control | 165 |
| Boom height control | 180 |
| Inputs | 187 |
| Review implement summary | 190 |
| Prescriptions | 191 |

Implements can be added, edited and deleted at the Implement setup panel. You can also calibrate boom height and section and rate control.


You must select an implement before you can enter the **Run** screen.

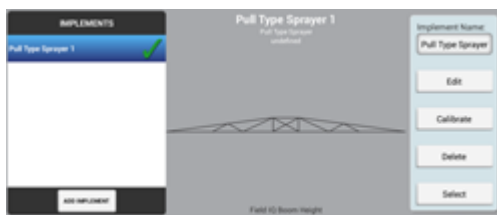
Implement setup

Use the Implement setup panel to select, add, edit, calibrate or delete an implement. Implements can be pull-type equipment or attachments for self-propelled equipment.

Before you set up an implement, create a vehicle. See [Add a vehicle \(page 111\)](#).

Add an implement

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Implement setup panel displays.




Tap **ADD IMPLEMENT**.

2. At the OPERATION section, tap the type of operation that you will use the implement to perform.
3. At the IMPLEMENT / Type section, tap the type of implement you will be using. Then tap **Next** to continue.
4. At the NAME section, the system has pre-named the implement by giving it the name of the type. You have the option to enter a different name if you want to change it.
5. Tap **Next** to continue to the MEASUREMENTS section. See for further instructions.

Save an implement

You can save complete or incomplete implements.


Save complete implement settings

1. Complete all of the implement setup and calibration steps for your operation, based on the implement type and features/plugins you have unlocked on the device.
2. When you complete the implement setup, your last step is the SUMMARY section.
3. Tap  to save the implement and return to the **Home** screen.

Save incomplete implement settings

The display allows you to save an incomplete implement and return to it later to complete.



Note – You cannot enter the run screen without a completed implement that you have selected.

1. Select an operation type, make, model and name the implement.
2. At any point after you complete the NAME section, tap **SUMMARY**, then tap .

Select an implement




Note – You can only enter the Run screen with an implement when the required implement setup and calibration steps are complete. When you change implements, make sure that all related configurations are accurate for the current operation.

To select an implement that is already set up:

1. Tap  at the **Home** screen.
2. To select an implement in the list, tap the implement.
3. Tap **Select**. The name of the implement highlights in blue and a  displays next to the name.



Note – Without a blue highlight, the  indicates an implement that was selected previously.

Edit an implement

1. Tap  on the **Home** screen. The Implement setup panel displays.
2. In the list of implements, tap the implement that you want to edit.
3. Tap **Edit**.
4. Tap the section where you want to make edits.
5. When you are finished, tap **Summary** at the top right corner of the screen. For details, see [Review implement summary \(page 190\)](#).
If any part of the setup is *Not Complete*, you can save the changes but you cannot use the implement on the **Run** screen.
6. To save your changes to the implement, tap . The **Home** screen displays.
7. To cancel/remove your edits and not change the existing profile, tap . A message displays, asking if you want to cancel without saving your changes. Tap cancel.

Delete an implement

You can delete an implement. However, when you do so, all settings associated with that implement will also be deleted.

1. Tap  on the **Home** screen.
2. Tap the implement you want to delete.
3. Tap **Delete**. A confirmation message displays for you to confirm you want to remove the implement.
4. Tap  to delete the implement.

ISOBUS for implements

ISOBUS is a set of software and hardware standards that makes possible the communication between equipment made by different manufacturers.

With ISOBUS, you can use the Precision-IQ field application to control an ISO-certified implement without an additional display. An ISO-certified implement has small computers called electronic control units (ECUs) which send signals to the Precision-IQ field application. An ISO-certified tractor has a tractor ECU (TECU) installed on it. ECUs on implements enable you to control the operation:

- With the Precision-IQ field application, using Task Controller (an optional feature)
- With Virtual Terminal, an on-screen window that opens on the Precision-IQ field application to access directly the functions provided by the ECUs

Task Controller setup

To set up the implement and Precision-IQ field application for Task Controller:


1. Connect the display to the ISO-certified implement with ISO cabling. See the *Getting Started Guide for ISOBUS on the Precision-IQ field application*.
2. Set up the GNSS receiver to send messages to the implement. See [CAN message settings \(page 99\)](#).
3. Unlock Task Controller. See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#).
4. Turn on the Task Controller feature. See [ISOBUS settings \(page 78\)](#).
5. Set up the implement for Task Controller. See [Implement setup for Task Controller \(page 161\)](#).

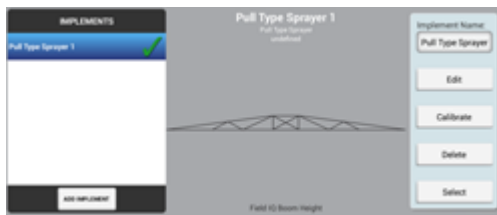
Also see:

- [Task Controller operation \(page 255\)](#)
- [Virtual Terminal operation \(page 257\)](#)

Implement setup for Task Controller



Note – Before you set up Task Controller, you must unlock the feature and have turned Task Controller on in the display settings. See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#) and [ISOBUS settings \(page 78\)](#).

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Implement setup panel displays.




Tap **ADD IMPLEMENT**.

2. At the OPERATION section, tap the type of operation you will be performing with the implement.
3. At the IMPLEMENT / Type section, tap the type of implement you will be using. Then tap **Next** to continue.
4. At the NAME section, tap **ISO Implement Data**. A list of ECUs that are connected to the Precision-IQ field application displays. Optionally, choose the ECU of the implement you will be using.
5. In the Name entry box, the system has pre-named the implement by giving it the name of the type. You have the option to enter a different name if you want to change it.
6. Tap **Next** to continue to the MEASUREMENTS section.
7. At the MEASUREMENTS section:
 - a. If the implement is connected during setup, the system completes the measurements by getting this information from the ECU you chose in step 4. Verify this information and make any necessary corrections.
 - b. If the implement is not connected during setup, enter the measurements manually. See .

Tap **Next** to continue to APPLICATION CONTROL.
8. Tap  to turn on the application control feature for the channel.
9. Tap  **Add**.
10. Tap **Next**.
11. The display takes you to a set of screens to set up the channel, beginning with the TYPE section. Complete the settings at the TYPE screen and tap **Next**.

| Tap... | To... |
|--------------------|--|
| Material Type | Select the material you will be applying: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anhydrous • Granular Fertilizer • Granular Seed • Liquid • Row Crop Seed |
| ISO Implement Data | Select the ECU of the implement you are using to assign this ECU to this channel. Note – <i>This is required before you can use this channel.</i> |

12. At the SETTINGS screen, tap  to turn on:
- Rate Control to use rate control. There is no need to complete any other settings because the ECU provides this information.
 - Rate Snapping to use rate snapping. This setting smooths out rate fluctuations seen on the screen.

| Setting | Explanation |
|---------|--|
| Off | The display shows instant readings from the feedback sensor. This may show frequent minor rate fluctuations. |
| On | The display smooths out the values. You will see the target rate as the applied rate whenever the applied rate is within 10% of the target rate. |

- Section Control if you want to use section control.
13. If you chose to use section control:
- While still at the SETTINGS screen, tap **Number of Sections**. The ECU sends this information to the system. Verify the number of sections and tap **Next**.
 - At the WIDTH screen the system shows the number of sections you indicated in the previous screen and the width of each section. This information is obtained from the ECU.
 - Tap **Next** to continue to LATENCIES.
 - At LATENCIES, enter the applicable settings for section control and tap **Next**.
 Latency refers to the delay between when the command occurs (to turn a section on or


off) and when application of the material actually starts or stops.

| Tap... | To... |
|---------------------------|--|
| On Latency | Enter the length of time (seconds) from when a section is turned on to when the system begins to apply material. |
| Off Latency | Enter the length of time (seconds) from when a section is turned off to when the system stops applying material. |
| Apply Latency to Boundary | Turn setting on or off by tapping. This setting applies to fields that have a boundary, and when you exit an exclusion zone and return to the workable area of the field. On: The system uses on latency to begin applying material immediately when crossing a boundary. Off: The system starts when the boundary is reached and any mechanical delay could leave a gap between the boundary and where the product is applied. When GPS accuracy is low, this is the preferred selection. |
| Sections Off when Stopped | Turn setting on or off: On: The sections shut down when the vehicle is stopped. Off: The sections remain open (turned on) when the vehicle is stopped. |

- e. At OVERLAPS enter the appropriate settings for section control and tap **Next**.

| Tap... | To... |
|----------------------------|--|
| Start Overlap | Enter the amount of overlap (distance) you want when starting coverage. When you are in a previously covered area driving toward a non-covered area, the system will begin turning sections on at this distance before reaching the non-covered area. |
| End Overlap | Enter the amount of overlap (distance) you want when stopping coverage. When you are applying material and driving toward a previously covered area, the system will keep sections on until they are this far into the previously covered area. |
| Coverage Switching Overlap | Enter the percentage of a section's width that must be in a previously covered area before the system switches the section off. The higher the number, the greater the overlapped area before the section is turned off. |



| Tap... | To... |
|----------------------------|---|
| Boundary Switching Overlap | Enter the percentage of a section's width that must be past a boundary before the system switches the section off. The higher the number, the greater the overlapped area before the section is turned off. |

14. At the SUMMARY screen, review the settings and tap  to save the settings for this channel.
15. For each additional channel, complete steps 9 through 14.
16. Complete the implement setup and save the Implement Summary. For instructions on Boom Height, Inputs and Summary, see:
 - [Boom height control setup \(page 180\)](#)
 - [Inputs \(page 187\)](#)
 - [Review implement summary \(page 190\)](#)
17. If you have not already done so, complete the setup for sending GNSS signals to the implement. See [CAN message settings \(page 99\)](#).
18. Set up the ISO-certified equipment to use Task Controller. See [ISOBUS settings \(page 78\)](#).

To operate the Task Controller, see [Task Controller operation \(page 255\)](#).

Equipment setup

As part of getting the implement ready to be controlled by Task Controller, you use Virtual Terminal to set the configuration for the implement.

1. Make sure the ISO-certified implement is connected and Virtual Terminal is turned on in Settings. See [ISOBUS settings \(page 78\)](#).
2. At any screen access the main menu by tapping . The main menu displays.
3. Tap . The Virtual Terminal displays.
4. Follow the instructions for the equipment you are using to set the implement for using Task Controller. See the *ISOBUS Getting Started Guide for the TMX-2050 Display*.

Application control

Note – For the correct connection of equipment, refer to the *Connecting the Field-IQ system's Crop Input Control Systems chapter in the TMX-2050 Display Cabling Guide*.

Note – If you will be using Task Controller with an ISO-certified implement, see [Implement setup for Task Controller \(page 161\)](#) to set up application control.

Application Control includes settings for rate and section control. When the Field-IQ feature is installed, the Precision-IQ field application can control spraying.

Prior to setup

Before you can set up Field-IQ Rate and/or Section Control, you must complete the following:

- Install Field-IQ Rate and/or Section Control.
- Add, configure and calibrate a vehicle. See [Add a vehicle \(page 111\)](#).
- Set up an implement. See [Implement setup \(page 158\)](#).

Channel setup

To set up application control for the Field-IQ system, complete the following steps:

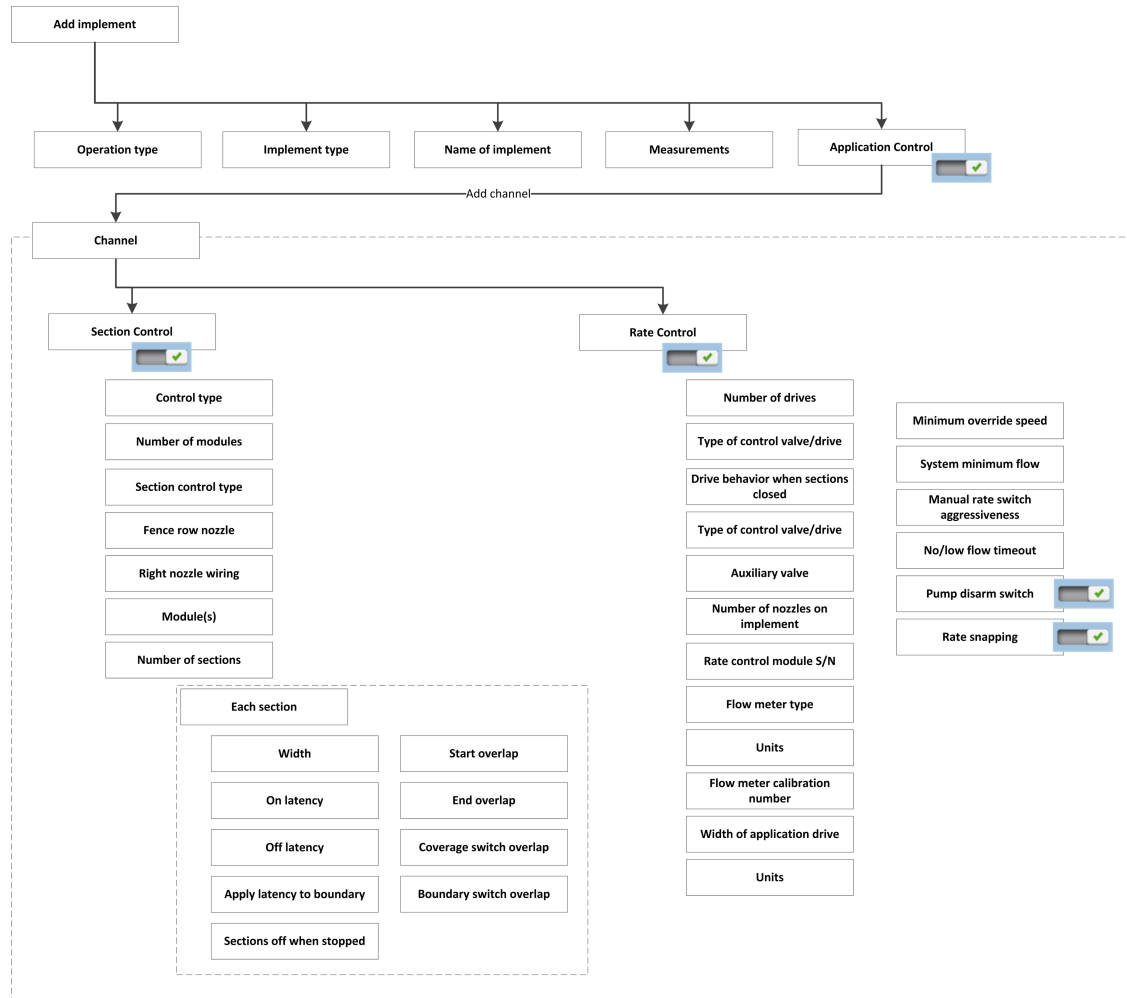
1. Turn on application control and [Add a control channel \(page 167\)](#).
2. For each control channel, complete the following settings as they apply to your equipment:
 - [Section control \(page 168\)](#)
 - [Rate control \(page 172\)](#)
 - [Adjustments \(page 177\)](#)

Review the channel configuration, see [Summary \(page 177\)](#).

To calibrate drives for Rate and Section Control, see [Calibrate application control drives \(page 175\)](#).




Setup diagram

The following diagram shows the setup sequence for a sprayer with Rate and Section Control.



Add a control channel

To add an application control channel (such as Field-IQ):

1. Tap  on the **Home** screen. The Implement setup panel displays.
2. Tap the implement you want to work with.
3. Tap **APPLICATION CONTROL**.
4. At APPLICATION CONTROL, turn the feature on by tapping .
5. Tap .


6. Tap **Next**.
7. The display takes you to a set of screens to set up the channel, beginning with the TYPE section.

| Tap... | To... |
|---|--|
| Material Controlled By | View the current option (control the material using a switch box). |
| Boom to Application Point or Toolbar to Application Point | <p>Enter this measurement only if the application point for this channel is not the same as the application point that you used for .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Measure from the application point used in the Implement Measurements section to the point where this material is applied. • If the new application point is further back, enter a positive value. If it is toward the front, enter a negative value. |
| Channel Name | The system names the channel. You can optionally change the name of the channel. |

8. Tap **Next** to continue. The display goes to one of the following, depending on your configuration: [Rate control \(page 172\)](#) or [Section control \(page 168\)](#).

Section control

At the Settings section for section control setup:

1. Tap  next to Section Control to turn on this feature. This toggles section control on or off for the current channel.
2. Tap **Control Type**.

| Tap... | To... |
|------------------------------|---|
| Field-IQ individual sections | Use Field-IQ Rate Control modules for Section Control. Continue to the next step (3). |

3. If you use Field-IQ for section control, tap each setting and choose an option.


| Tap... | Tap to... |
|----------------------|--|
| Number of Modules | Enter the number of Section Control modules you have installed. The maximum number of Section Control modules is 4. |
| Section Control Type | <p>Select the type of section control hardware you have installed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Boom Valve: The section control module sends power to the section valve to turn on the clutch off. • Tru Count Liquiblock™ valve: The section control module sends power to the section valve to turn on the clutch on. • Tru Count Air Clutch®: The section control module sends power to the section valve to turn on the clutch on. • Tru Count Section Electric Clutch: The section control module sends power to the section valve to turn on the clutch off. |
| Fence Row Nozzle | <p>Identify the location of fence row nozzles on the implement, if any:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None (Default) • Left Only • Right Only • Both <p>Note – The display only controls the fence row if the sprayer configuration allows it. Refer to the Field-IQ installation guide for additional information.</p> |
| Right Nozzle Wiring | <p>Select the wiring option used during installation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you are using an EZ-Boom® automated application control system or Raven replacement harness, select the EZ-Boom setting. • Otherwise, choose the Field-IQ option. |

4. Tap **Next** to continue to [Modules \(page 169\)](#).

Modules

1. At the Modules section for Section Control, tap the box for the module and complete the following settings.

| Setting | Options |
|--------------------|---|
| Serial Number | Select the serial number of the Section Control Module installed at this location. The display reads the serial numbers from the installed modules. |
| Number of Sections | Enter the number of sections physically wired into this module (up to 12 sections per control module). |

2. Tap  when you have completed the settings for each module. Then tap **Next** to continue to [Width \(page 170\)](#).

Note – When you upgrade the Precision-IQ field application firmware, the firmware for Field-IQ modules are also upgraded. There are no additional steps required to upgrade modules.

Width

1. At the WIDTH section for Section Control, review the width of each section per module.
2. To change a width of a the section, tap it. Begin with the first one on the left, and work from left to right.
3. The system will not allow you to change the width of the sections to be more or less than the total width of the implement.
4. Tap **Next** to continue to [Latencies \(page 170\)](#).

Latencies

Latency refers to the delay between when the command occurs (to turn a section on or off) and when application of the material actually starts or stops.

1. At the Latencies section for Section Control, review and make changes as necessary to the settings.

| Tap... | To... |
|------------------------------|---|
| On Latency | Enter the length of time (seconds) from when a section is turned on to when the system begins to apply material. |
| Off Latency | Enter the length of time (seconds) from when a section is turned off to when the system stops applying material. |
| Apply ON Latency to Boundary | Turn setting on or off by tapping. This setting applies to fields that have a boundary, and when you exit an exclusion zone and return to the workable area of the field. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On: The system uses on latency to begin applying material |

| Tap... | To... |
|---------------------------|---|
| | <p>immediately when crossing a boundary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off: The system starts when the boundary is reached and any mechanical delay could leave a gap between the boundary and where the product is applied. When GPS accuracy is low, this is the preferred selection. |
| Sections Off when Stopped | <p>Turn setting on or off:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On: The sections shut down when the vehicle is stopped. Off: The sections remain open (turned on) when the vehicle is stopped. |

2. Tap **Next** to continue to [Overlaps \(page 171\)](#).


Overlaps

At the Overlaps section for section control, review and make any necessary changes to the settings.

| Tap... | To... |
|----------------------------|---|
| Start Overlap | <p>Enter the amount of overlap (distance) you want when starting coverage.</p> <p>When you are in a previously covered area driving toward a non-covered area, the system will begin turning sections on at this distance before reaching the non-covered area.</p> |
| End Overlap | <p>Enter the amount of overlap (distance) you want when stopping coverage.</p> <p>When you are applying material and driving toward a previously covered area, the system will keep sections on until they are this far into the previously covered area.</p> |
| Coverage Switching Overlap | <p>Enter the percentage of a section's width that must be in a previously covered area before the system switches the section off. The higher the number, the greater the overlapped area before the section is turned off.</p> |
| Boundary Switching Overlap | <p>Enter the percentage of a section's width that must be past a boundary before the system switches the section off. The higher the number, the greater the overlapped area before the section is turned off.</p> |

Rate control

On the Settings screen for Rate Control:

1. Tap  next to Rate Control. This toggles rate control on or off for the current channel.
2. After you turn on rate control, tap each setting and choose an option.

| Tap... | To... |
|---|---|
| Number of Valves/Drives | The maximum number of drives is 1. |
| Control Valve/Drive Type | <p>Choose the type of drive that you is installed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fast Bypass Servo • Fast Servo: 4-wire servo valve • Hardi % Bypass • PWM: 2-wire PWM valve (commonly used to control hydraulic flow) • Pump Servo • Standard Bypass Servo • Standard Servo: 2-wire standard servo valve <p>Note – Bypass (for Servo and Hardi drives only) means that the controller is on the return-to-tank line. The valve closes to increase the application rate.</p> |
| Auxiliary Valve (for inline liquid/anhydrous channels only) | <p>Set the auxiliary valve:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disable- The equipment does not have an auxiliary control valve. • Dump - Valve opens to dump flow-to-return line when the system is turned off. • Master - Valve closes when the system is turned off. |
| Number of Nozzles | Enter the number of nozzles on the implement, between 1 and 999. |
| Valve/Drive Behavior when Sections Closed | <p>Set the behavior when sections are closed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Close - When all sections are off, the control valve returns to the closed position. • Lock in Minimum Position - When all sections are off, the control valve remains at the minimum flow position. This option applies to PWM drives only. |

| Tap... | To... |
|--------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lock in Last Position - When all sections are off, the control valve remains in the last position. This setting allows the system to return to the target rate faster. This option applies to Servo drives only. |

3. Tap **Next** to continue to [Valve/Drive \(page 173\)](#).

Valve/Drive

1. At the VALVE/DRIVE section for Rate Control, tap the box that represents each drive and set the required values.

| Tap... | To... |
|--|--|
| Serial Number | Choose the serial number of the Rate Control Module at this location. The display shows the serial numbers from the installed modules. |
| Flow Meter Type | Select the type of flow meter installed for this drive. (Raven, Trimble, or Other). |
| Flow Meter Calibration Number | <p>Enter the calibration number from the tag on the flow meter. The display calculates the calibration pulses per unit of volume.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Raven - pulses per 10 gallons (liters) Trimble - pulses per gallon (liter) Other - pulses per gallon (liter) |
| Units (only if Flow Meter Type is Other) | <p>Choose the unit of measurement used by the flow meter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pulses per gallon (liter) Pulses per cubic inch (centimeter) |

2. Tap . Then tap **Next** to continue to [Width \(page 173\)](#).

Width

1. At the Width section for Rate Control setup, the width is equal to the implement width and cannot be changed.
2. Tap **Next** to continue to [Adjustments \(page 177\)](#).

Adjustments

At the Adjustments section for Rate Control setup, review and change settings as necessary. When you are finished with all the settings, tap **Next**.




WARNING – When the implement is down and the master switch is in the On position, the machine is fully operational. Take all necessary precautions to ensure user safety. Failure to do so could result in injury or death.

| Tap... | To... |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Minimum Override Speed | Change this setting. When the vehicle drops below this speed, the system maintains the application rate for this speed. This ensures consistent material flow at low speeds. |
| System Minimum Flow | Enter the minimum flow rate required by the drive, control valve or flow meter. This setting keeps the flow above the minimum operating level required by the equipment. |
| Manual Rate Switch Aggressiveness | <p>Increase or decrease aggressiveness of the manual rate switch. When the Rate switch is in the Manual position, this controls how quickly the valve opens/closes when you use the rate increment/decrement switch on the master switch box.</p> <p>Note – This setting does not affect automatic rate control.</p> |
| No/Low Flow Timeout | Enter a value between 1 and 10 seconds. If the rate of application is not at least 25% of the target rate for this length of time, the display shows a critical fault message and the system shuts down. |
| Pump Disarm Switch | <p>Turn setting on or off. If the implement has a pump disarming relay that is connected to the controller, this setting adds a button to the Run screen to arm and disarm the pump.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enable: Select this option if you have a pump disarming switch installed. • Disable: Select this option if you do not have a pump disarming switch installed. |
| Rate Snapping | <p>Turn setting on or off. This setting smooths out rate fluctuations seen on the screen.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off: The display shows instant readings from the feedback sensor. This may show frequent minor rate fluctuations. • On: The display smooths out the values. You will see the target rate as the applied rate whenever the applied rate is within 10% of the target rate. |

Calibrate application control drives




WARNING – When the implement is down and the master switch is in the On position, the machine is fully operational. Take all necessary precautions to ensure user safety. Failure to do so could result in injury or death.

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Implement setup panel displays.
2. At the list on the left-hand side, tap the implement you want to calibrate, then tap **Select**.
3. Tap **Calibrate**. The calibration section opens at the Summary section.
4. Tap **Application Control**.
5. Tap the channel to calibrate it. A popup displays.
6. Tap **Calibrate**. The calibration tool displays, beginning at the Drive Limits section.
 - If *Maximum Flow* is unknown, use the default (0.00) to allow the system to determine maximum flow.
 - You can also use this formula to calculate Maximum Flow:

$$\text{boom width} \times \text{ground speed} \times \text{application rate} \times \text{calculation factor}$$
 - For metric systems, use meters for width and kph for ground speed, with a calculation factor of 0.00167.
 - For standard systems, use feet for width and mph for ground speed, with a calculation factor of 0.00202.
7. Tap **Next** to continue to the Drive Settings section.

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Target Speed | Enter the test speed to use during calibration. The system will apply material at the rate required to reach the Target Rate if the vehicle travels at this speed. |
| Target Rate | Set test rates to use for Rate 1 and Rate 2. |
| Master Switch | Indicates whether the Field-IQ Master Switch is on or off. |
| Applied Rate | The applied rate for comparison to the <i>Target Rate</i> . |
| Integral Gain (for Servo drives only) | If the drive is slow to come up to rate, increase the <i>Integral Gain</i> and turn on <i>Boost (Feed Forward)</i> . If the applied rate is erratic, decrease the <i>Integral Gain</i> . |
| Proportional Gain (for PWM drives only) | If the drive is slow to come up to rate, increase the <i>Proportional Gain</i> and turn on <i>Boost (Feed Forward)</i> . |

| Setting | Description |
|--|---|
| | If the applied rate is erratic, decrease the <i>Proportional Gain</i> . |
| Minimum Response | If the drive is not responding, increase the <i>Minimum Response</i> . If the system has large fluctuations in applied rate, decrease the minimum response. |
| Minimum Position (for PWM drives only) | <i>Minimum Position</i> is the duty cycle the system commands to when all sections are off and you are using <i>Lock in Minimum Position</i> (see). |
| Allowable Error | If the Applied Rate is less than this amount away from the target rate, the system will not send commands to adjust the rate. |
| Boost (Feed Forward) | If the drive is slow to come up to rate, increase the <i>Integral/Proportional Gain</i> and turn on <i>Boost (Feed Forward)</i> . |


8. Tap **Next** to continue to the Information section.
9. Review the calibration results. The minimum and maximum values indicate the speed and flow ranges that will apply during operations.
10. To accept the calibration, tap .

Also see:

- [Field-IQ diagnostics \(page 286\)](#)
- [Field-IQ system operations \(page 242\)](#)

Virtual tank/bin

If you have the Field-IQ system's Rate Control, you can use an on-screen (virtual) tank to monitor tank or bin levels based on the amount of material applied.

1. At the Virtual Tank section, tap  next to Virtual Tank. This toggles the virtual tank On and Off for the current channel.

2. Tap each setting and then choose an option.

| Tap... | To... |
|----------------------|--|
| Units | Select the units to use for tank volume (gallons/liters). |
| Full Capacity Volume | Enter the tank's capacity. |
| Warning Type | Choose how you want to trigger the low-volume alarm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume: Alarm when volume dips below this level. • %: Alarm when volume is less than this percent of capacity. |
| Warning Level | Enter the volume (amount or percent) below which you want to see an alert. |

3. Tap **Next** to continue to [Adjustments \(page 177\)](#).

Adjustments


At the Adjustments section for application control, review and change the settings for the current channel as required.

| Tap... | To... |
|--------------------|--|
| Jump Start Speed | Adjust the jump start speed. When the Field-IQ system's Master switch is in the jump start position, the system applies material at the rate for this speed instead of the vehicle's current speed. This manual override option can be used to operate the system when the vehicle is stationary, or when GPS is unavailable. |
| Jump Start Timeout | Adjust start timeout. This setting limits the length of time you can run the jump start. Note – Auto-control resumes if Jump Start Speed is exceeded by ground Speed. |
| Shut Off Speed | Adjust shut off speed. The system shuts down if the implement drops below this speed. |

When you have completed these settings, tap **Next** to continue to [Summary \(page 177\)](#).




Summary

The Summary section shows an overview of all the settings for the channel.

1. Review the channel details.
2. To change channel settings, tap **Back** until you reach the section you wish to edit..
3. Tap . The display saves the channel and returns to the Application Control section for implement setup.
4. Tap **Next** to continue to:
 - a. [Boom height control setup \(page 180\)](#), if applicable
 - b. [Inputs \(page 187\)](#), if applicable




Modify a control channel



To edit an application control channel:

1. Tap  on the **Home** screen. The Implement setup panel displays.
2. Tap the implement you want to work with.
3. Tap **APPLICATION CONTROL**.
4. Tap the control channel that you want to change, then tap **Modify**.
5. Tap the button at the top of the screen for the channel setting that you want to change.
6. When you finish making changes, tap **Summary** at the top right corner of the screen.
7. If any part of the setup is not complete, you can save the changes but you cannot use the implement on the **Run** screen.
8. To save the channel and return to the Application Control section , tap . The display returns you to the Implement setup panel.
9. To exit channel setup without saving, tap . A message displays, asking if you want to cancel without saving your changes. Tap **cancel**.

Remove a control channel

To remove an application control channel:

1. Tap  on the **Home** screen. The Implement setup panel displays.
2. Tap the implement you want to work with.
3. Tap **APPLICATION CONTROL**.
4. Tap the control channel that you want to remove, then tap **Remove**. The system displays a confirmation message for you to confirm that you want to remove the channel.
5. Tap  to confirm the removal. Otherwise, tap  to cancel the removal.

6. When you finish making changes, tap **Summary** at the top right corner of the screen.
7. If any part of the setup is *Not Complete*, you can save the changes but you cannot use the implement on the **Run** screen.
8. To save the channel and return to the Application Control section , tap . The display returns you to the Implement setup panel.
9. To exit channel setup without saving, tap . A message displays, asking if you want to cancel without saving your changes. Tap cancel.

Boom height control

Note – For the correct connection of equipment, refer to the *Connecting the Field-IQ system Crop Input Control Systems* chapter in the *TMX-2050 Display Cabling Guide*.

Implement setup includes *Boom Height* if you have a boom height control feature unlocked on the device.

Before setting up Field-IQ Boom Height Control, you must complete the following:

- Unlock and install Field-IQ Boom Height Control.
- Add, configure and calibrate a vehicle. See [Add a vehicle \(page 111\)](#).
- Set up the implement. See [Implement setup \(page 158\)](#).

Note – A SIM must be present before you can use Boom Height Control.

To set up Field-IQ Boom Height Control, complete the following settings:

1. [Boom height control setup \(page 180\)](#)
2. [Sensor location \(page 181\)](#)
3. [Operation settings \(page 182\)](#)

Also see:

- [Boom height control operation \(page 248\)](#)
- [Boom height adjustments \(page 250\)](#)
- [Calibrate boom height control \(page 184\)](#)
- [Boom Height Diagnostics \(page 274\)](#)

Boom height control setup

1. At the Control section of the Boom Height settings, review and make changes to the settings as appropriate.

| Tap.... | To.... |
|---------------------|--|
| Boom Height | Turn the feature on or off. |
| TM-200 Module S/N | Choose the appropriate serial number of the TM-200 Module. |
| Boom Control Layout | Select the option you want for controlling the boom height: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control Booms + Center Section • Control Booms + Monitor Center Section |

| Tap.... | To.... |
|------------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control Booms Only • Control Center Only • Monitor Only: Shows the boom height on the Run screen, without the option to automatically control boom height |
| Valve/Drive Module S/N | Choose the serial number of the valve/drive module. |

2. Tap **Next** to continue to [Sensor location \(page 181\)](#).

Also see:

- [Boom height control operation \(page 248\)](#)
- [Boom height adjustments \(page 250\)](#)


Sensor location

At the Sensor Location section of Boom Height settings:

1. Tap **Number of Height Sensors**. Select the number of height sensors installed on the system.
2. Tap each sensor box to complete the settings for the sensor.

Note – The current display shows the center section of the boom as a side view and the right boom as the left boom. This does not hinder functionality or settings.

| Tap... | To.... |
|---------------|---|
| Enabled | Turn the sensor on or off. |
| Sensor S/N | Select the serial number for the sensor. The display reads the serial numbers from the installed sensors. |
| Side Offset | Enter the distance from the center line of the sensor to the hinge point of the boom. (Does not apply to the center section.) |
| Nozzle Offset | Enter the distance from the transducer surface to the spray nozzle tip. |

3. When finished, tap . The display returns to the SENSOR LOCATION section.
4. Continue setting up each sensor.
5. Tap **Next** to go to [Operation settings \(page 182\)](#).

Also see:

- [Boom height control operation \(page 248\)](#)
- [Boom height adjustments \(page 250\)](#)

Operation settings

At the OPERATION section of Boom Height settings, review the existing settings. Make changes to the settings as required. Your options will depend on which option you chose for the Boom Control Layout in the Control section. See [Boom height control setup \(page 180\)](#) for more information.



WARNING – Working without a working SIM is dangerous.

Refer to the settings listed below to edit operation settings.

Note – The settings that display on your screen depend on the type of Boom Control Layout you chose at the CONTROL section. (See [Boom height control setup \(page 180\)](#).)

| Tap... | To... |
|-----------------------|---|
| Target Height | Enter the distance above the ground or crop canopy (see Sensing Mode below) that you want the nozzles to be. |
| Minimum Target Height | Set the lowest value that the target height can be set to. If a height sensor on a multi-sensor zone is reporting a height lower than this value, the display will switch from using the average zone height to using just the lowest sensor. |
| Maximum Target Height | Set the maximum height that the target can be. |
| System Aggressiveness | Set the aggressiveness for the boom height control system. A higher value is more aggressive, and a lower value is less aggressive. |
| Roll Stabilizer | Raise this setting to increase the boom roll stability. |
| Sensing Mode | <p>Select how the system will detect the boom height:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ground: Boom height is based on the surface of the ground. Use Ground mode to sense the ground surface through low coverage vegetation, such as stubble or young crops. • Canopy (default): Boom height is based on the top of the crop canopy. Select Canopy mode to sense the closest object seen. This is used to sense bare ground or high-coverage broad leaf crop canopy. <p>Note – Ground mode is susceptible to unwanted reflectance on hard or wet surfaces, such as bare ground. If this is an issue, select Canopy mode.</p> |

| Tap... | To... |
|--------------------|---|
| Target Height Step | The distance the target height will increase. |
| Advanced | <p>Opens the advanced settings:</p> <p><i>Boom Down Rate:</i> Reduce this setting to lower the maximum downward speed of the boom.</p> <p><i>Sensor Sensitivity:</i> Low, normal or high.</p> <p><i>Sensor Canopy Filter:</i> Off or on</p> <p><i>Sensor Ground Filter:</i> Off, low, medium or high</p> <p><i>Minimum Safety Height:</i> Adjust this setting. When an individual sensor measures a height less than this setting below the current target height, the display will switch from using the average sensor zone height to using just the lowest sensor's height (and ignore the higher sensor). This setting only applies to multi-sensor zones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lowering the threshold: Will make the system more aggressive at raising a zone when a individual sensor is low, especially when two sensors report different heights. Raising the threshold: will improve the boom roll stability. Default is 4 inches (0.1m). Minimum = 0 (aggressive ground avoidance. Maximum = 1.0 (effectively disabled). <p><i>Auto Disable Timeout:</i> Sets the "Timeout" time frame if the system "Enable" button was selected and the system was not "Engaged", after this period of time the system will disable itself. 30 or 60 seconds.</p> <p><i>Height Error Indicator Band:</i> Adjust this setting. If the boom is within this distance of the target height, the screen will indicate that the system is at the target height.</p> <p>Note – This setting is for on-screen indication and does not impact performance. The system will still work to drive the boom closer to the target height.</p> <p><i>Roll Dampening Threshold:</i> Use this height error threshold to help dampen underdamped wins and improve roll stability. 4-8 inches (0.1-0.2m) is typical. A value of 0 (default) disables this additional dampening.</p> |

Tap **Next** to continue to [Inputs \(page 187\)](#).

Also see:

- [Boom height control operation \(page 248\)](#)
- [Boom height adjustments \(page 250\)](#)

Calibrate boom height control

Each boom's hydraulic drive must be calibrated before you can use the Field-IQ system Boom Height Control on the **Run** screen. Before you calibrate boom height control:

- Complete the implement and boom height configuration.
- Take the equipment to a field with a firm, natural surface (not concrete, not freshly tilled).
- Make sure that the hydraulic fluid is at normal operating temperature.


Note – On some vehicles with large reservoirs, it may take a longer amount of time for the fluid to reach operating level, especially if the implement circuit is lightly loaded. Consult the vehicle documentation to determine if the hydraulic fluid temperature can be shown on a vehicle console.

- Use the manual control panel to test the system prior to calibration. See [Boom height manual control test \(page 185\)](#).

Also see:

- [Boom Height Diagnostics \(page 274\)](#)
- [Boom height control operation \(page 248\)](#)
- [Boom height adjustments \(page 250\)](#)

Boom height calibration steps



1. Access the calibration for boom height control.
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap .
 - b. Tap the implement you want to calibrate, and then tap **Select**.
 - c. Tap **Calibration**.
 - d. Tap **Boom Height**. The boom height calibration panel displays.
 - e. Tap **Calibrate** for the boom you want to calibrate.
2. Tap **BOOM CALIBRATION**.



3. Tap **Calibrate** for the boom you want to calibrate. The calibration tool displays.




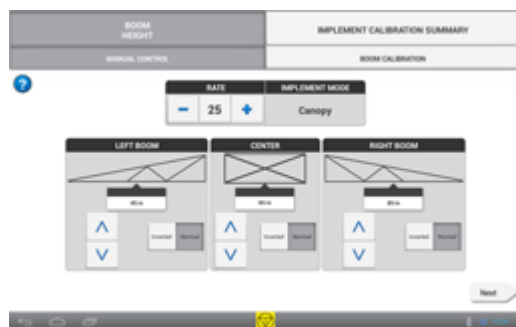
WARNING – Moving parts during this operation. Make sure that the implement is safe to operate.


4. Tap **Calibrate**. The calibration process begins.
5. When the calibration process is complete, tap .
6. If you want to view and edit advanced calibrations for the boom drive, tap **Advanced**. (The **Advanced** button is not available until basic calibration is complete.) The advanced calibration displays. Change the settings as appropriate. For these settings, see [Operation settings \(page 182\)](#), under the Advanced setting.
7. Complete steps 2 through 6 for each boom drive.
8. Tap **Next** to continue to the Calibration Summary.
9. At the Calibration Summary, tap  to save the settings.






Boom height manual control test

Before you calibrate boom height, make sure the booms are reacting as you would expect to raise and lower commands.

1. Access the manual control panel for boom height control.
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap .
 - b. Tap the implement you want to calibrate, and then tap **Select**.
 - c. Tap **Calibration**.
 - d. Tap **Boom Height**. The boom height panel displays.
2. Tap **Manual Control**. The MANUAL CONTROL section displays.





3. If you have a SIM module, for each boom:
 - a. Set the switch in the cab to the *Raise* position. Make sure that the  button for the boom you are working with is lighted. If the wrong button lights up, check the wiring.

- b. Set the switch in the cab to the *Lower* position. Make sure that the  button for the boom you are working with is lighted. If the wrong button lights up, check the wiring.
 4. If you do not have a SIM module:
 - a. Tap  for each boom you are working with. Make sure that the boom goes up.
 - b. Tap  for each boom you are working with. Make sure that the boom goes down.
 - c. If the boom moves in the wrong direction, tap the **Inverted** button for the boom and then repeat steps 3a and 3b.
 - d. Optionally, tap the  and  buttons to adjust the *Rate*, and then repeat Step 2. This raises and lowers the boom more quickly or more slowly for testing only. The Rate on this screen does not affect boom height functions on the Run screen.
 5. Each control has an up and down button for manual control. Use Rate to adjust the actuator output speed. If the boom moves too quickly, adjust the rate value down and vice versa. Each zone has:
 - A canopy height readout for each sensor associated with that zone
 - A status indicator for the manual height control switches associated with the zone (if enabled)
- Refer to the installation guide for troubleshooting assistance.
6. For each boom section:
 - a. Press and hold the up button.
 - b. Verify that the appropriate section of boom moved up.
 - c. Verify that the height readings for each sensor on that boom increased.
 - d. Press and hold the down button.
 - e. Verify that the appropriate section of boom moved down.
 - f. Verify that the height readings for each sensor on that boom decreased.
 - g. Verify external switches are connected correctly by pressing each vehicle manual boom control switch. The switch status corresponding to each input should turn green while the switch is pressed.
 7. If the booms operate as you expect, tap **Next** to continue to boom calibration. See [Boom height calibration steps \(page 184\)](#).
 8. If the booms are not operating as you expect, you will not be able to calibrate and you will have to troubleshoot the system.



Inputs

At the INPUTS section, you can add sensors available on your implement.

Add a sensor

1. Turn Sensors on by tapping .
2. Tap  **Add** to add a sensor. The TYPE section displays.

Type of sensor

1. Choose the type of sensor you are using:
 - a. Air pressure
 - b. Liquid pressure
 - c. Vacuum pressure
2. Turn the sensors feature on by tapping .
3. Tap  **Add**.
4. Tap the name entry box to edit the name of the sensor.
5. Tap **Next** to continue to the [Location of sensor \(page 187\)](#) section.

Location of sensor

At this section, complete the following settings.



| Tap... | To... |
|------------------------------|---|
| Select Module | Select serial number of the sensor. The display reads the serial numbers from the installed sensors. |
| Input Location on FIQ Module | Select the port on the the Field-IQ system control module where the sensor connects to the system. Note – For bin level, RPM, and gate height sensors, this is set automatically and cannot be changed. |
| Units | Select the measurement units used by the sensor. |
| Display in Control Channel | Shows name of channel. Selected whether or not the sensor shows up in the <i>Sensors Area</i> of the Rate Control Widget for the channel. |

| Tap... | To... |
|--------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No - if you do not want to see the sensor Channel number (1-6) - the material control channel where you want to see the sensor |



Tap **Next** to continue to [Alarms \(page 188\)](#).

Alarms

At the Alarm section, you can set up alarms for sensors.

1. Turn on Alarms by tapping  .
2. Change the settings as appropriate.

| Tap... | To... |
|---------------|--|
| Alarm | Turn this feature on or off. |
| Warn If Below | Enter the value that will trigger the alarm when the sensor reading is below this value. |
| Warn if Above | Enter the value that will trigger the alarm when the sensor reading is above this value. |
| Warn After | Adjust the number of seconds before the alarm triggers. |

3. Tap . The display saves your settings and returns to the Inputs section. See [Inputs \(page 187\)](#).
4. Tap  **Add** to add another sensor.
5. Tap **Next** to go to the SIM section (see .

Note – All pressure sensors must be calibrated. When you are ready to perform the calibration, see [Inputs / Sensors calibration \(page 189\)](#).

SIM

Note – If you are using Boom Height Control, a SIM is required.


If your system has a SIM, at the SIM section choose the type of sprayer. If your system does not have a SIM, tap **Next**.


You may also choose to enable or disable boom height here.

1. For some self propelled sprayers that are using the SIM to control sections for Field-IQ on the factory joystick or console, tap **Application Control FIQ** and select the sprayer you are using.

2. If you need to disable the override feature on the booms, tap **Boom Height** and choose disable. This will cause the joystick controls to no longer disengage automatic boom height control.
3. Tap **Next** to continue to the Summary section.



Inputs / Sensors calibration

1. At the Home screen, tap . The Implements panel displays.
2. Select the implement and then tap **Select**.
3. Tap **Calibrate**.
4. Tap **INPUTS**.
5. Tap the sensor you want to calibrate. A popup displays.
6. Tap **Calibrate**.
7. Tap **Enabled**.
8. Tap **Calibration Type** and select the type of calibration you wish to perform:
 - a. *High/Low* - More accurate and requires a pressure gauge for reading the actual pressure. (If you chose this type, continue to step 9.)
 - b. *Point/Slope* - Requires a slope value for the equipment from the manufacturer of the implement. (If you chose this type, continue to step 10.)
9. To complete calibration for the High/Low method:
 - a. Tap **Start Calibration**.
 - b. Read the instructions on the screen and then tap **Next** to begin.
 - c. Without the system running, take a reading. Enter this value into the *Actual Pressure* field and then tap **Next**.
 - d. Run the system at normal working pressure and take a reading. Enter this value into the *Actual Pressure* field.
 - e. Tap **Next**.
 - f. Run the system at normal working pressure and take a reading. Enter this value into the *Actual Pressure* field.
 - g. Run the system from low to high levels to verify the change in sensor readings.
 - h. Tap **Accept** or tap **Recalibrate** to repeat the process
10. To complete calibration for the Point/Slope Method:
 - a. Enter the *Slope* value for the sensor from the manufacturer.
 - b. Tap **Start Calibration**.
 - c. For *Actual Pressure*, enter the current pressure. Tap **Next** to continue.

- d. Review the results. If the *Measured Pressure* is not accurate, tap **Recalibrate** and repeat the calibration with a new Slope value.
 - e. Tap **Accept** when the *Measured Pressure* is accurate.
11. Repeat Step 5 through Step 10 for each sensor. When finished, tap .

Review implement summary

The SUMMARY section displays when you complete all of the setup and configurations steps, or when you edit an implement.

| To ... | Tap ... |
|--|---|
| Save the implement with any changes you have made. |  |
| Exit the setup without saving changes. The display will let you choose to save the changes or exit without saving. |  |

Prescriptions

The information in a prescription is used to send target rates to the variable rate controller. Applied rates are received from the controller, and both target and applied rates appear on the screen. With prescriptions functionality, you can:

- Transfer one or more prescription files to or from the Precision-IQ field application (import or export)
- Assign a prescription to a channel
- Use a prescription to determine the rates to be applied in different areas of a field

Also see:

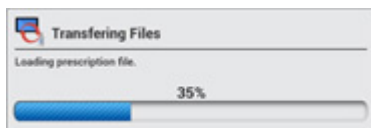
- [Prescriptions Manager \(page 56\)](#)
- [Importing prescriptions \(page 191\)](#)
- [Exporting prescriptions \(page 191\)](#)
- [Use a prescription \(page 253\)](#)
- [Assign a prescription \(page 252\)](#)

Importing prescriptions

Note – If you are using USB to import, make sure your USB drive has the AgGPS folder on the root, and the prescription files are in this folder.

You can import prescription files using:

- USB
 - Office Sync
1. To transfer one or more prescriptions to the Precision-IQ field application, follow the steps at [Data transfer \(page 58\)](#).
 2. When transferring using USB, at the USB list on the left side of the data transfer panel, you can select the entire prescriptions folder or individual files within the folder.
 3. During the transfer, the Precision-IQ field application shows the progress of the transfer.



Exporting prescriptions

Note – If you are using USB to export, make sure your USB drive has the AgGPS folder on the root.

You can export prescription files from the Precision-IQ field application using a USB drive. See [USB data transfer \(page 59\)](#).

Materials

In this chapter:

| | |
|---|------------|
| Managing materials | 194 |
| Material list | 194 |
| Add a material | 196 |
| Edit a material | 198 |
| Delete a material | 198 |
| Assign a material to a channel | 198 |
| Calibrate material flow | 199 |

At the Materials setup panel, you can add and edit materials as well as calibrate material flow.

Managing materials

You assign materials to material control channels for the Field-IQ system Rate and Section Control.

If you have the Field-IQ system Rate Control or Section Control, material setup requires:

- [Add a material \(page 196\)](#)
- [Assign a material to a channel \(page 198\)](#)

You must also calibrate the material flow. See [Calibrate material flow \(page 199\)](#).

Use the material setup panel to add, edit, assign, or delete materials.

Material list

The categories and types of materials in the Materials library are listed below.

Anhydrous

The materials in this category are Anhydrous and Other.

Granular fertilizer

- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|
| • Adjuvant | • Herbicide | • Other |
| • Fertilizer/Lime | • Insecticide | • Rodenticide |
| • Fungicide | • Manure | |
| • Growth Regulator | • Nematacide | |

Liquid

- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|
| • Adjuvant | • Herbicide | • Other |
| • Fertilizer/Lime | • Insecticide | • Rodenticide |
| • Fungicide | • Manure | • Water |
| • Growth Regulator | • Nematacide | |


Granular seed

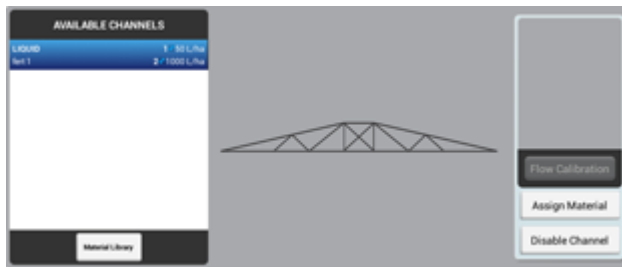
- Barley
- Beans, Dry
- Canola
- Corn
- Corn, seed
- Cotton
- Millet
- Oats
- Other
- Peanuts
- Popcorn
- Potatoes
- Rice
- Rye
- Sorghum Grain
- Sugar Beets
- Sunflowers
- Wheat

Row crop seed

- Barley
- Beans, Dry
- Canola
- Corn
- Corn, seed
- Cotton
- Millet
- Oats
- Other
- Peanuts
- Popcorn
- Potatoes
- Rice
- Rye
- Sorghum Grain
- Sugar Beets
- Sunflowers
- Wheat

Add a material

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Material setup panel displays.
2. Tap **Material Library**.



3. Tap **Add**.



4. Tap each setting and then select or enter a value.

| Tap... | To... |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Material Name | Tap the text entry box and then use the on-screen keyboard to enter a name for the material. |
| Material Category | Select the type of material being applied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anhydrous • Granular fertilizer • Granular seed • Liquid • Row crop seed |
| Type | Type of material. See Material list (page 194) . |
| Distributed Units | Select the units to use with the selected material. |
| Target 1 | Control the volume that the implement supplies when Rate 1 is selected. |
| Target 2 | Control the volume that the implement supplies when Rate 2 is selected. |
| Rate Increment | Set rate increment. When you increment/decrement Rate 1 or Rate 2 on the Run screen, the current application rate increases or decreases by this amount. |
| Minimum Rate | Set the minimum rate that will be applied. |
| Maximum Rate | Set the maximum rate that will be applied. |
| Material Details (optional) | Set additional details, if needed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EPA Product Number: Enter the registration number for the material from the environmental protection agency for the area, if applicable. • Manufacturer: Enter the material manufacturer's name. • Restricted Use: Tap Yes or No to record whether use of the material is restricted by local, regional, or national laws. • Posting required • Buffer Distance: Enter the buffer distance from the product label of the material. • Max Wind Speed: Enter the maximum wind speed from the product label of the material. • Notes: Enter any other notes that you want to record with the |




| Tap... | To... |
|--------|-----------|
| | material. |

5. Tap each setting and then select or enter a value.

Edit a material


1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Material setup panel displays.
2. Tap **Material Library**.
3. Select the material in the list on the left-hand side of the screen and then tap **Edit**.
4. Tap each setting to make the required changes. See the settings table under the section [Add a material \(page 196\)](#).
5. Tap .

Delete a material

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Material setup panel displays.
2. Tap **Material Library**.
3. Select the material in the list on the left-hand side of the screen and then tap **Delete**. The system displays a confirmation screen.
4. Tap  to remove the material and  to cancel the deletion.

Assign a material to a channel


Note – If you do **not** have the Field-IQ system Rate Control, you cannot assign a material to a channel.

1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Material setup panel displays.



2. Tap the channel in the list on the left-hand side of the screen.
3. Tap **Assign Material** on the right-hand side of the screen.
4. Tap the material that you want to assign to the channel. The list shows only the materials that are the same type as the control channel's Material Type.


If you have not set up the material that you want to assign, tap **Material Library**.


If a material is already assigned to the channel, the item in the list has a  next to that material.

Note – For the most accurate application, calibrate the flow. See [Calibrate material flow \(page 199\)](#).

Calibrate material flow

For the most accurate application, calibrate the flow.

 **WARNING** – During flow calibration, the machine will become operational. Take all necessary precautions to ensure user safety. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.


 **WARNING** – Material will be dispensed during calibration. Make sure that the implement is safe to operate.

Pre-calibration steps

Before you calibrate flow:

1. Complete the implement and rate control configuration and calibrations.
2. Select a control channel and assign a material. See [Managing materials \(page 194\)](#).

Calibration steps



1. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Material setup panel displays.
2. Tap the channel name in the list on the left-hand side of the screen.
3. Tap **Flow Calibration** on the right-hand side of the screen.
4. Tap the drive you want to calibrate. The calibration tool displays.
5. Review the settings and update if necessary.

Note – For information about the appropriate values for your sprayer, refer to the support note *Field-IQ crop Input Control System: For Sprayers and Spreaders*.

| Tap... | To... |
|-------------|--|
| Target Rate | Enter the rate to use for the calibration. |
| Speed | Enter the test speed to use during calibration. The system will apply material at the rate required to reach the Target Rate if the vehicle was traveling at this speed. |



WARNING – Moving parts during this operation. Make sure that the implement is safe to operate.

6. Tap **Run Calibration**.
7. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the flow calibration.
8. To accept the new values, tap .
9. To use the new values but recalibrate with them, tap **Recalibrate**.
10. To discard the new values and begin again, tap .

Operations

In this chapter:



| | |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Preparing for operation | 202 |
| Fields and guidance | 203 |
| Tasks | 204 |
| Layers | 204 |
| Adjustments during operation | 204 |
| Automatic transfer of data | 204 |
| Tasks | 206 |
| Coverage logging | 209 |
| Vehicle operation | 210 |
| Guidance patterns | 214 |
| Landmarks | 235 |
| Layers | 239 |
| Field-IQ system operations | 242 |
| Prescriptions | 252 |
| ISOBUS | 255 |
| On-screen widgets | 259 |
| Alerts and warnings | 265 |

During operations while working in the **Run** screen, you can:

- Create and adjust guidance patterns
- Engage or disengage the steering system
- Start a new task, include status widgets on the screen
- Make adjustments to steering, guidance, rate and section control and boom height control

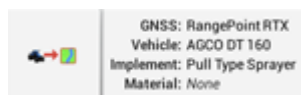
Preparing for operation


Before you can enter a field in the **Run** screen, you must:

- Set up a positioning service. See [GNSS receiver settings \(page 84\)](#) and ensure GNSS is functioning correctly.
- [Add a field \(page 152\)](#).
- [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).
- Set up a vehicle. See [Vehicle setup \(page 110\)](#).
- Select a vehicle:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Vehicle setup panel displays.
 - b. At the list on the left-hand side of the setup panel, tap the name of the vehicle you want to select. The display changes the list item to a blue background with white text.
 - c. To select the vehicle before performing field activities at the **Run** screen, tap **Select**. A  and the blue highlight indicates which vehicle you chose.



The display indicates in the lower left-hand portion of the screen which vehicle is selected for field activities.






- Set up an implement. See [Implement setup \(page 158\)](#).
- Select an implement. See [Select an implement \(page 159\)](#).
- Select a material:
 - a. At the **Home** screen, tap . The Material setup panel displays.
 - b. Tap the material name in the list on the left-hand side of the screen.

Choose a field to enter



You can enter a field you currently have selected or one that is not currently selected.

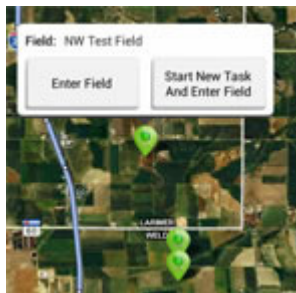
Currently selected field

To enter a field that is currently selected, tap   . The **Run** screen displays.

Field not currently selected

To enter a field not currently selected:

1. At the **Home** screen, the map shows points () where your fields are located. Tap the  that represents the field you want to enter. (For a map to display on the **Home** screen, you must have a updated GNSS connection.).
2. A popup displays with the field name and two buttons.



3. To enter the field without beginning a new task, tap **Enter Field**.
4. To start a new task, tap **Start New Task and Enter Field**. The **Run** screen displays.

Run screen

The text and buttons displayed on your **Run** screen depend on:

- Whether you are using a guidance / steering system or manual guidance
- Other features you are using
- How your Precision-IQ field application is set up

Fields and guidance

When you enter a field, you can create boundaries, guidance patterns and landmarks within that field. To edit any of these elements, open the Field Manager. Here you can rename your field, and include the name of your client and the name of the farm where the field is located.

See:

- [Field Basics \(page 150\)](#)
- [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#)

Tasks

While in the **Run** screen, you can log coverage of the activity you are performing in the field. As your activity is logged, applicable information is saved in a task. The information related to each task includes (but is not limited to):

- The field in which the task took place
- Time and date
- The type of operation performed

When you pause during a field activity, you can continue the same task or you can begin a new task (if you will be performing a different type of operation). At the Field Manager, you can view the history of tasks completed for each field.

See:

- [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#)
- [Tasks \(page 206\)](#)

Layers

While the system is logging your field activity, you have the option to view one layer of activity at a time. For example, you can view overlaps in coverage or the speed of your vehicle throughout the operation. You must have logging on to see layers of coverage.

See [Coverage logging \(page 209\)](#).

Adjustments during operation

While you are performing field activities, you can make adjustments to:

- [Steering adjustments \(page 212\)](#)
- [Guidance pattern adjustment \(Run screen\) \(page 233\)](#)
- [Boom height adjustments \(page 250\)](#)
- [Field-IQ system operations \(page 242\)](#)

Automatic transfer of data

The Precision-IQ field application can wirelessly transfer information recorded during your field activities to Connected Farm and the office. This requires:

- A DCM-300 modem
- A subscription to Office Sync
- A data plan or access to WiFi
- A Connected Farm account

Also see:

- [DCM-300 modem initial setup \(page 101\)](#)[Modem services settings \(page 78\)](#)
- [Modem services settings \(page 78\)](#)
- [Office Sync settings \(page 80\)](#)
- [Data transfer \(page 58\)](#)

Tasks

A task consists of the combination of implement type and the selected field. The Precision-IQ field application stores field activities related to each task. By using tasks, you do not have to continually configure frequently used field profiles.

When you enter a field with the same operation and implement that you used previously, the display continues the previous task unless the *Max Task Time* has already passed.

When you change operation, implement, or field, the display automatically starts a new task.

Use the Task History section in Field Manager to:

- Open a previous task.

This is helpful if you enter a field and do not see coverage that you want to see from an earlier activity. This shows the coverage from the previous task in the field, and adds the new activity to the previous task

- Start a new task.

This is helpful if you enter a field and you see coverage from an earlier activity that you do not want to see for the current activity. When you start a new task the display removes the previous coverage from the Run screen and saves the current activity in a new task.


Data stored in each task

The data stored in each task includes:

- The field you are working in
- Date and time for starting and stopping task
- Coverage list: The list of task coverages for the field
- Coverage overlap: The area of coverage overlap
- Height: Mean height above sea level
- Speed: The speed of the vehicle
- Material: The material being applied, if applicable
- Guidance engaged: When the automatic guidance system was and was not engaged
- Applied rate: The rate material is applied
- GPS Quality: The quality of GPS

Create a task


There are three ways you can create a task:

- **Automatically:** If you enter a field with an implement with operation that does not match any currently stored task, a new task will be created automatically.
- At the **Field Manager Task History:** Tap to enter the Field Manager, select the task history and start a new operation. For this option, an implement must be selected. If not, the display pops up a message to tell you what is required to create the task.
- At the **Home** screen: Select . The system displays the field name along with the option to go to the field and create a new task.


Add a task (Run screen)

Tap **Start New Task** to begin a new task. The display will not show previous related map coverage layers on the **Run** screen.

Review existing tasks (Field Manager)

1. Select the field. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).
2. Tap  to open the Field Manager.
3. Tap **Task History**.
4. Tap the tasks on the left-hand side of the screen to review previous tasks:
 - Tap + or - to show or hide tasks for each operation.
 - Tap a specific task to select it. Each task is shown with its start and end date and time.
 - The map shows the coverage layer(s) saved for the selected task

Review existing tasks (Field Manager)

1. Select the field. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).
2. Tap  to open the Field Manager.
3. Tap **Task History**.
4. Tap the tasks on the left-hand side of the screen to review previous tasks:
 - Tap + or - to show or hide tasks for each operation.
 - Tap a specific task to select it. Each task is shown with its start and end date and time.
 - The map shows the coverage layer(s) saved for the selected task

Edit a task (Field Manager)


1. Add a task or select an existing task.
2. Tap **Continue Task** to add current coverage to the selected task. The display will show the previous related coverage on the Run screen.
***Note** – This option is only available if the implement you have selected is for the same type of operation.*
3. Make sure that the *Max Task Time* is suitable.
 - a. If the implement and operation do not change, the display adds coverage to the current task until the task exceeds the *Max Task Time*.
 - b. If the *Max Task Time* is not acceptable, tap the number of days to change it.
4. Tap **Exit** to save the changes and close the Field Manager.

Coverage logging

Coverage logging:

- Records the area that you have covered when you carry out an operation, for example applying fertilizer to a field
- Allows you to see different map layers of your coverage as you are working in the field.

Manual coverage logging

To activate coverage logging, tap .

Automatic logging with engage

If your system has been configured to do so, coverage will start when your auto guidance system is engaged. Coverage will stop when auto guidance is disengaged. To turn on this capability, see [Patterns settings \(page 75\)](#).

If automatic logging is activated, you can still turn logging on or off when engaged or when disengaged.

Editing layers

To edit settings for layers, see [Edit a coverage layer \(page 240\)](#).




Vehicle operation

At the **Run** screen, tap the screen to display the vehicle position buttons. The **Engage** button shows the status of your auto guidance system as well as enables you to tap on the button to engage the system.



WARNING – Many large and sudden changes in satellite geometry caused by blocked satellites can cause significant position shifts. If operating under these conditions, auto-guidance systems can react abruptly. To avoid possible personal injury or damage to property under these conditions, disable the auto-guidance system and take manual control of the vehicle until conditions have cleared.

Vehicle position





| Button | Tap to... |
|---|---|
|  | Change point of view on the Run screen to an overhead view. |
|  | Change the point of view on the Run screen to a view with the horizon. |
|  | Zooms view in or out on the Run screen. |

Engage status with auto guidance


When the **Engage** button turns yellow, you can tap it to engage the auto guidance. After your guidance system is engaged, the button changes to green.

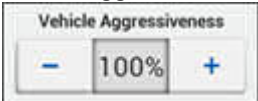



WARNING – Auto guidance systems cannot avoid items in the field such as obstacles. Make sure you are adequately trained to operate the auto guidance system.

| Indicator/Button | Auto guidance system is... |
|--|--|
|  Gray Engage Disabled | Disabled. Enable it in the steering control panel. This is an indicator only. |
|  Red Cannot Engage | Does not have the proper conditions met to engage. Tap to determine the reason. |
|  Yellow Ready to Engage | Ready to engage (yellow). Tap to engage the auto guidance system. |
|  Green Engaged | Engaged (green). Indicates you are engaged on a pattern or line and are using auto guidance. Tap to disengage. |

Steering adjustments


To adjust steering while performing field activities, at the **Run** screen, tap . The system displays the steering adjustment buttons.

| Button | Use to... |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Vehicle Aggressiveness  | Adjust the vehicle aggressiveness. |
| Autosteering Enabled  | Enable or disable auto steering. |

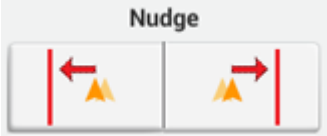


Also see:

- Vehicle aggressiveness for Autopilot: [Engage aggressiveness \(page 137\)](#)
- Vehicle aggressiveness for EZ-Pilot: [Online aggressiveness calibration for EZ-Pilot system \(page 142\)](#)
- Diagnostics: [EZ-Pilot system diagnostics \(page 277\)](#), [EZ-Steer system diagnostics \(page 282\)](#)
[Autopilot system diagnostics \(page 270\)](#)

Guidance adjustments

To adjust guidance while performing field activities, at the **Run** screen, tap . The guidance adjustment buttons display.

Note – These adjustments are removed if you enter a new task. Your system may also be set up to remove these adjustments with a power cycle. See [Steering and guidance settings \(page 76\)](#) for these settings.

| Buttons | Use to... |
|--|---|
| <p>Nudge</p>  | <p>Temporarily move the vehicle left or right depending on the direction you chose. .</p> <p>To set the increment that nudge moves, see Steering and guidance settings (page 76).</p> |
| <p>Remark</p>  | <p>Temporarily move the pattern to the vehicle's current location.</p> <p>For information on re-mark settings, see Steering adjustments (page 212).</p> |
| <p>Implement Draft Correction</p>  | <p>Move the implement back on the guidance line if the implement is physically drifting offline in the field. The value between the arrow buttons indicates the amount of distance for the correction.</p> <p>To set the increment that implement draft correction moves, see Steering and guidance settings (page 76).</p> |

Guidance patterns


Guidance items you can place in the field from the **Run** screen include:

- Boundaries
- Straight or curved lines
- Headlands
- Pivots








After you have created guidance items, you use Field Manager to:









- Edit guidance lines, patterns and boundaries.
- Activate or deactivate boundaries, guidance lines and patterns.

| To create: | To edit: | Settings/adjustments: |
|--|---|---|
| <p>Go to the Run screen. See:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AB guidance line creation (Run screen) (page 220), A+ guidance line creation (Run screen) (page 221), Curved line creation (Run screen) (page 222) • Boundary creation (Run screen) (page 217) • Headland and infill pattern creation (Run screen) (page 223), Pivot pattern creation (Run screen) (page 230) | <p>Open Field Manager. See:</p> <p>Boundary editing (Field Manager) (page 218), Guidance pattern editing (Field Manager) (page 231)</p> | <p>At the Run screen:</p> <p>Adjust during field activities: Guidance pattern adjustment (Run screen) (page 233)</p> <p>At Settings:</p> <p>Set where the beginning of the guidance line begins in relation to the equipment. See Patterns settings (page 75).</p> |

At the **Run** screen, tap  to access the buttons for creating boundaries, guidance lines and headlands and pivots.


Guidance creation buttons



| Button | Tap to... |
|---|--|
| Boundary  | <p>Record the perimeter of a field. You can use boundaries to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Calculate area • Switch implement sections on and off at the edge of the field • Generate end of row warnings <p>See Boundary creation (Run screen) (page 217).</p> |
| Headland  | <p>Record the exterior circuit of a field. Repeat the circuit for multiple headland passes and create an infill pattern.</p> <p>The display uses the implement width to generate the required number of headland circuits, a headland boundary outside of the exterior headland circuit, and an infill boundary inside of the interior headland boundary.</p> <p>See Headland and infill pattern creation (Run screen) (page 223).</p> |
| Pivot  | <p>Record the exterior curve of a circular field and repeat the pattern.</p> <p>The display uses the implement width to generate concentric circles. It also creates a pivot field boundary based on the specified distance to the pivot field edge.</p> <p>See Pivot pattern creation (Run screen) (page 230).</p> |
| AB Line  | <p>Record a straight line from point A to point B. Parallel guidance lines (or swaths) will be projected multiple times on either side of the AB line.</p> <p>See AB guidance line creation (Run screen) (page 220).</p> |
| A+ Line  | <p>Set a straight directional line from point A toward the selected direction (compass direction, path of travel, or heading value). Parallel guidance lines will be projected multiple times on either side of the A+ line.</p> <p>See A+ guidance line creation (Run screen) (page 221).</p> |
| Curve  | <p>Record a line with curved and/or straight segments. Matching guidance lines will be projected multiple times on either side of the curved line.</p> <p>See Curved line creation (Run screen) (page 222).</p> |
| Set Point A  | <p>Set the starting point of a line.</p> |
| Set Point B | <p>Set the end point of a line.</p> |



| Button | Tap to... |
|---|--|
|  | |
| Pause  | Suspend recording while you continue to drive. The display will replace the path you travel while paused with a straight line. |
| Record  | Begin recording a path as you drive it. |
| Complete  | Finishes the guidance item you have created and saves it. |
| Cancel  | Exits the process of creating a guidance item and does not save it. |
| Compass Point  | Set the heading direction for an A+ line to a compass direction. See A+ guidance line creation (Run screen) (page 221) . |
| Use Current Heading  | Set the heading direction for an A+ line based on the vehicle's current position. See A+ guidance line creation (Run screen) (page 221) . |
|  | Lock the current angle of the vehicle. See A+ guidance line creation (Run screen) (page 221) . |

Boundary creation (*Run screen*)






You can change the point on the implement's swath where you wish to record the boundary's edge:

Right, Center, or Left. To make this change, tap  before you begin driving.


1. Enter the field where you want to create the boundary. See [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#).
2. Tap . The pattern buttons display.
3. Tap .


4. When you are ready to begin your boundary tap  and begin driving the perimeter of the field or area. The display:
 - Marks the point where you began recording
 - Shows the recorded path with a dashed line
5. Drive around the field until you are near your starting point.
 - If Auto-Close is on: When you reach auto-close distance, the display will connect the vehicle's current location to the starting point with a straight line and save the boundary.
 - If Auto-Close is off: Drive to the beginning point and tap . The display will connect the vehicle's current location to the starting point with a straight line and save the boundary.

To set the auto close feature, see [Patterns settings \(page 75\)](#).

6. When finished, the display makes the boundary you created active, and saves it with a unique name. The distance between swath lines is based on the width of the implement that was used to create the line.
7. To suspend recording while creating the boundary, tap . The display will replace the path you travel while paused with a straight line, from the point where you tapped  to the point where you resume recording. To resume recording, tap  or .
8. To cancel the boundary line creation, tap .
9. To edit any boundary you have created, see [Boundary editing \(Field Manager\) \(page 218\)](#).

Boundary editing (Field Manager)

1. At the **Home** screen, select the field where you want to edit the boundary. Tap  to open the Field Manager.

Or if you are at the **Run** screen, tap  to open the Field Manager for the field you are currently in.

2. At the Field Manager, tap **BOUNDARIES**.





The map and the Boundaries list show the boundaries in the selected field(s).


The display highlights the active pattern in blue on the map.

For headland boundaries (inner and outer), the list shows the implement type and width used to create each pattern.

3. To select a boundary, tap it on the map or in the list on the left-hand side of the screen.
4. To edit the pattern, use the buttons on the right-hand side of the screen.

Note – The display shows only the options that are suitable for the selected item.


| Tap... | To... |
|---|--|
| Name | Use the on-screen keyboard to rename the selected item. |
| Resize  Note – Not available on headland boundaries. | To resize the boundary: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tap . b. Tap the text box and use the on-screen number pad to enter the distance to move the boundary. c. To shift the boundary outward (making the area larger), tap Expand. d. To shift the boundary inward (making the area smaller), tap Contract to shift the boundary inward (making the area smaller). e. Tap . The display saves a copy of the pattern with a new name at the new position. |
| Delete  | Remove the selected pattern. |


5. To save the changes and close the Field Manager, tap .



Also see [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#).

Boundary activation/deactivation (Field Manager)

You can activate or deactivate boundaries in a selected field.

1. At the **Home** screen, select the field where you want to edit the boundary. Tap  to open the Field Manager.

Or if you are at the **Run** screen, tap  to open the Field Manager for the field you are currently in.








2. Tap **BOUNDARIES**.
3. Tap on the boundary in the list on the right-hand side.
4. Tap  (red) to activate an inactive boundary.
5. Tap  (black) to de-activate an active boundary.

Also see [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#).

AB guidance line creation (*Run* screen)



With AB lines, you define the start and end points.



Note – The display uses the implement width to project swaths for the master line. Active lines project swaths in either direction based in the width used to create the line.

1. Enter the field where you want to create the line. See [Enter a field \(*Run* screen\)](#) (page 154).
2. Tap . The pattern buttons display.
3. Tap .
4. Tap  to set the beginning of the line. The display:
 - Marks on the map where you tapped .
 - Shows a straight dashed line between the A point and the vehicle's current location.
5. To complete the line and close the controls, tap .
6. To save the line, tap . The distance between swath lines is based on the width of the implement that was used to create the line.
7. To cancel the AB line creation, tap .



A+ guidance line creation (*Run* screen)

With A+ lines, you define a point on the line and the direction the line is heading.








1. Select a vehicle, implement and field. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).
Note – The display uses the implement width to project swaths for the master line.
2. Enter the field where you want to create the line. See [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#).
3. Tap . The pattern buttons display.
4. Tap . The display changes to overhead view if you were in trailing view. The A point is set at the vehicle's current location. The A+ line controls appear in the center of the screen.
5. Select the direction you want for the A+ line.
6. To set the direction of the line, you can do any of the following:

- To use the direction that the vehicle is facing as the heading, tap .
- To use the on-screen number pad to enter an exact heading, tap the number.
- To use a cardinal (N, S, E, W) or ordinal (NE, SE, SW, NW) direction, tap that direction on the compass (.

The display saves the line. The distance between swath lines is based on the width of the implement that was used to create the line.

7. To accept the line and direction and close the controls, tap . The display saves the line. The distance between swath lines is based on the width of the implement that was used to create the line.
8. To cancel the line creation, tap .









Curved line creation (*Run screen*)

1. Enter the field where you want to create the boundary. See [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#).
2. Tap . The pattern buttons display.
3. Tap .
4. When you are ready to begin the line tap . The display:
 - Marks your starting point on the map, at the point where you tapped record.
 - Shows the recorded path with a dashed line between the starting point and the vehicle's current location.
5. To create a straight line as part of your curved line, tap  and then tap  again.
6. When you are at the end of the line, tap .
7. To cancel the line creation, tap .


Headland and infill pattern creation (*Run* screen)

1. Select a vehicle, implement and field. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).

Note – The display uses the implement width to place the headland boundary, space the circuits and project guidance lines for the pattern.


2. Tap   to enter the field.
3. Tap . The pattern buttons display.
4. Tap . The headlands options display.
5. If the number of circuits is not correct, edit the number you want to create by tapping the number and entering the correct amount.
6. Optionally, select the type of infill pattern you want by tapping the correct button (AB, A+ or curve).
7. Tap  and begin driving the perimeter of the field. The display:
 - Marks the position you were at when you tapped record. You can tap  and then  again, as required.
 - Shows the recorded path with a dashed line.
 - The controls for the infill line (if any) appear below the headland recording controls.
8. If you are using an infill pattern, create the line for your infill pattern. See instructions for the type of line you are creating:
 - [AB guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 220\)](#)
 - [A+ guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 221\)](#)
 - [Curved line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 222\)](#)
9. Continue driving around the field until you are near your starting point.
 - If Auto-Close is on: When you reach auto-close distance, the display will connect the vehicle's current location to the starting point with a straight line and save the pattern.
 - If Auto-Close is off: Drive to the beginning point and tap . The display will connect the vehicle's current location to the starting point with a straight line and save the pattern.

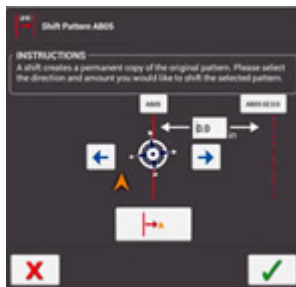
To set the auto close feature, see [Patterns settings \(page 75\)](#).
10. When finished, the display:
 - a. Saves the headland pattern with a unique name (for example, HL01).




- b. Generates an inner boundary and an outer boundary based on the recorded path and the width of the implement. The headland boundaries are saved with a unique name related to the headland (for example, HL01 inner boundary and HL01 outer boundary).
 - c. Generates an infill swath based on the number of circuits selected and the width of the implement. The infill swath is saved with a unique name related to the headland (for example, DefaultInfillSwath).
11. To cancel the pattern creation, tap .

Infill pattern shift

To shift the infill pattern, complete the following steps.

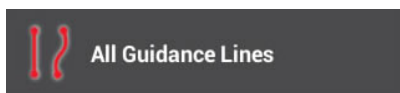
1. At the **Run** screen, open the Field Manager by tapping .
2. Tap **GUIDANCE PATTERNS**.
3. In the list of patterns, tap to select the infill pattern you want to shift, and tap **Activate**.
4. Tap **Shift**. The Shift Pattern tool displays.




5. Tap  to shift the pattern left or tap  to shift the pattern right.
6. In the entry box, enter the distance you want to shift the pattern.
7. Tap  to save the shift.
8. The shifted pattern is saved with a new name.
9. Tap the headland circuit pattern to select it, and tap **Activate**.
10. Tap **Infill**. The Infill Selection list displays.



11. Tap . The All Guidance Lines list displays.



12. Tap to highlight all the infill patterns (including the shifted pattern you just created) you want to associate with the headland pattern you activated.
13. Tap . The Infill Selection list displays again.



14. Highlight the shifted swath and tap ✓ .
15. The shifted infill is now activated along with the headland swath.
16. Tap **Boundaries**. Activate the inner headlands boundary.
17. Tap **Exit** to closes the Field Manager.
18. Verify that the shifted infills are now shown and can be used for guidance.

Change the infill pattern

Note – This process assumes you have an existing headland and an infill pattern has been created.

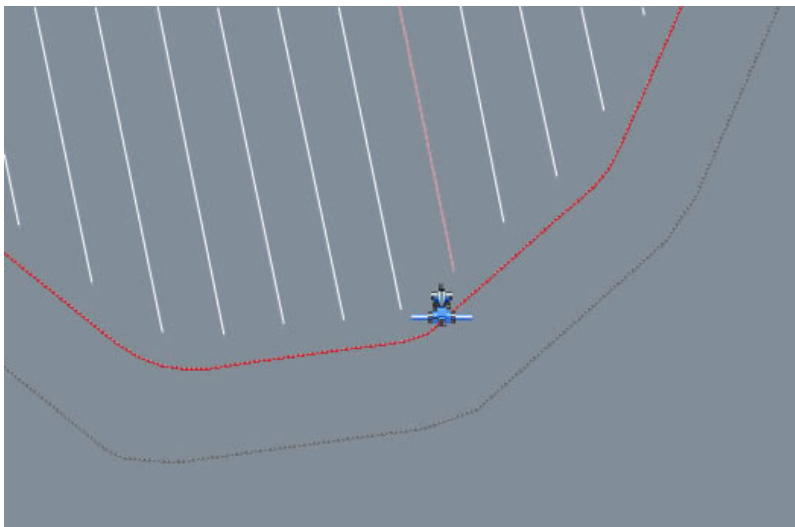
1. Select a vehicle, implement and field. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).

Note – The display uses the implement width to place the headland boundary, space the circuits and project guidance lines for the pattern.

2. Tap    to enter the field.

If you need to create a new infill pattern to change to, go to step 3.

If you have an existing infill pattern you want to change to, go to step 4.



Note – If the system has been turned off, when you enter the field you will only see the headland on the **Run** screen and not the infill pattern.

3. At the **Run** screen, create a new guidance line to use as the infill pattern. See [AB guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 220\)](#) or [A+ guidance line creation \(Run screen\) \(page 221\)](#).

Note – This new guidance line is automatically made active by the system, which deactivates all other guidance patterns, including the headland you are working with.

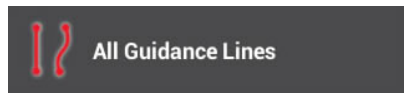
4. Open the Field Manager by tapping .

5. At the **Guidance Patterns** tab:
 - a. Highlight the headland circuit pattern you want to work with and tap **Activate**. (This is not necessary if you want to change to an existing line and did not need to create a new one in step 3.)
 - b. Tap **Infill**. The Infill Selection list displays. This lists the infill pattern that is currently assigned to use with the headland.



- c. Tap .


The All Guidance Lines list displays. This lists all guidance lines that have been created for this field that are within the headland boundary.



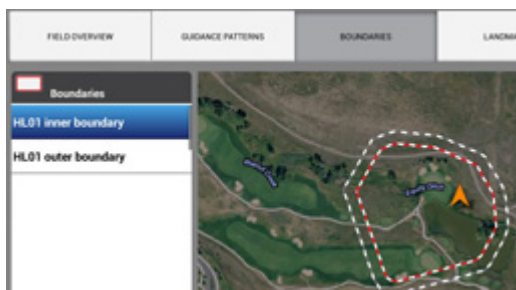
- d. Tap to highlight the guidance lines you want to associate with the headland (including the new guidance line you created in step 3).

Tap . The Infill Selection list displays again.



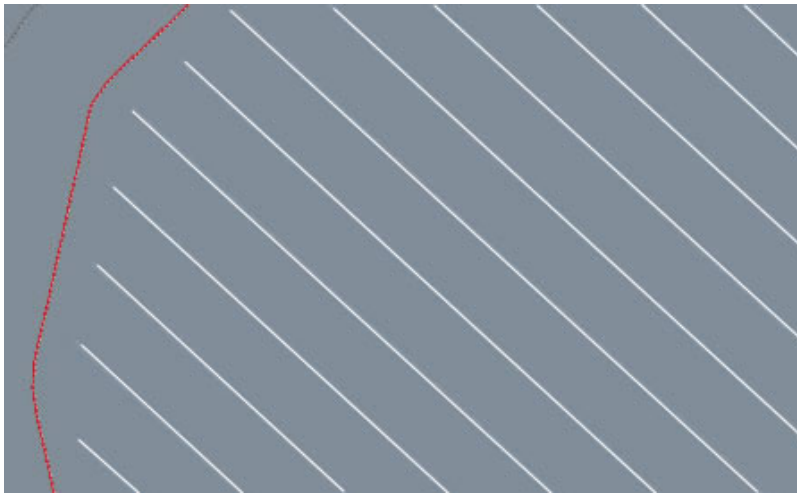
- e. At the Infill Selection list, highlight the guidance line you want to change to and tap . This assigns the guidance line to the headland.

6. Tap **Boundaries**. In the Boundaries list on the left-hand side, tap the inner boundary of the headland, then tap **Activate**.









7. Exit the Field Manager by tapping **Exit**.


The new infill pattern will show in the inner boundary of the headland.




Pivot pattern creation (*Run* screen)


1. Enter the field where you want to create the pivot. See [Enter a field \(Run screen\) \(page 154\)](#).
2. Tap . The pattern buttons display.
3. Tap .
4. Tap  and begin driving the outer perimeter of the field. The display:
 - Marks your starting point on the map, at the vehicle's location when you tapped record.
 - Shows the recorded path with a dashed line.
5. Drive at least 50 feet on an outer tower rut and then tap .
6. Enter the distance to the Pivot Field Edge and tap .
7. When finished, the display:
 - Saves the pivot pattern with a unique name (for example, P01).
 - Generates a pivot boundary based on the recorded path and the width of the implement. The pivot boundary is saved with a unique name related to the headland (for example, P01 Boundary).
 - Makes the pivot boundary active.
8. To cancel the pivot creation, tap .


Guidance pattern editing (Field Manager)


1. At the **Home** screen, select the field where you want to edit the boundary. Tap  to open the Field Manager.




Or if you are at the **Run** screen, tap  to open the Field Manager for the field you are currently in.

2. Tap **GUIDANCE PATTERNS**. The map and the Patterns list show the patterns in the selected field.
3. Tap the pattern you want to edit.

The pattern must be active before you can edit it. If the pattern is not active, tap  (red) to make it active.

4. The display highlights the active pattern in blue on the map.
5. If you have chosen a headland, you can change the number of circuits in a headland.
6. Tap  to resize the pattern you have chosen.






Or for a pivot pattern, tap .

7. Edit the size of the pattern and tap .
8. To cancel the change, tap .
9. To exit Field Manager, tap .

Also see [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#).


Pattern activation/deactivation (Field Manager)

You can activate or deactivate patterns in a selected field. To engage your auto guidance system on a line, pattern or headland, it must be active.

1. Tap  to open the Field Manager. Field Manager opens to the Field Overview section.
2. Tap **GUIDANCE PATTERNS**.
3. Tap on the line, headland or pivot area in the list on the right-hand side.
4. To activate:
 - An inactive pattern, tap  (red).
 - An inactive guidance line, tap  (red).
5. To de-activate:
 - An active pattern, tap  (black).
 - An active guidance line, tap  (black).

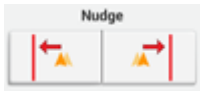


Also see [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#).

Guidance pattern adjustment (*Run* screen)


To adjust guidance while performing field activities, at the **Run** screen, tap .


The system displays the guidance adjustment buttons.

Note – These adjustments are called "temporary" because they are not stored in the system. After reboot or power off, the system returns to the original settings.



| Button | Use to... |
|---|--|
| <p>Nudge</p>  | <p>Moves the position of the vehicle in a perpendicular direction (left or right) to the line you are engaged on currently.</p> <p>To adjust the size of the increments, see Steering and guidance settings (page 76).</p> |
| <p>Remark</p>  | <p>Temporarily move the line or pattern to the vehicle's current location or the value entered by you.</p> |
| <p>Implement Draft Correction</p>  | <p>Temporarily adjust the implement incrementally to the right or to the left by tapping the arrows. The value is reset when a new task is started or the display is powered off.</p> <p>The value in the middle indicates the amount the implement has been corrected.</p> <p>To adjust the size of the increments, see Steering and guidance settings (page 76).</p> |

Guidance pattern shifting (Field Manager)

1. At the **Home** screen, select the field where you want to edit the boundary. Tap  to open the Field Manager.

Or if you are at the **Run** screen, tap  to open the Field Manager for the field you are currently in.

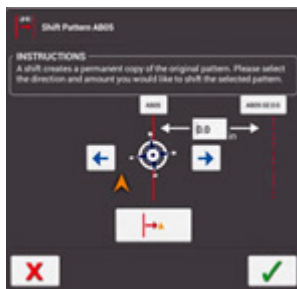
2. Tap **GUIDANCE PATTERNS**.





3. Tap the pattern you want to edit. If the selected pattern is active, tap  (black) to make it inactive. If the selected pattern is not active, tap  (red) to make it active.

Note – If you activate a pattern that was created with a different implement width, the display will prompt you to shift the line for the new width or keep the original position.

4. If you have chosen a headland, you can change the number of circuits in a headland.

5. Tap . The Shift Pattern tool displays.



6. Tap the left or right arrow to indicate the direction you want to shift the pattern.
7. Tap  to shift the pattern to the vehicle's current position, or you can enter the amount you want to shift the pattern.
8. To make the change, tap . The system creates a copy of the original pattern with the shift change.
9. To cancel the change, tap .
10. To exit Field Manager, tap .

Landmarks





When you are in the **Run** screen, you can place field items in the field, including:

- Lines, such as fences
- Points, such as trees
- Areas, such as ponds

After you have created landmarks, you can edit them and assign them to categories using Field Manager. See [Landmark editing \(Field Manager\) \(page 238\)](#).









At the **Run** screen, tap  to access the controls for creating landmark points, lines and areas.

Landmark buttons










| Button | Tap to... |
|--|--|
| Point  | Place a point indicator on the field map marking a point. Available types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Generic (such as a gate, riser, tile inlet, water trough, well) • Rock • Pest (insects, weeds) • Obstacle (hole, tree, hazard) |
| Line  | Record a line marking a landmark. Available types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Generic (such as border, drip tape, gate, path, road) • Obstacle (cable, ditch, fence, hazard, pipe, river, stream, terrace, trees) |
| Area  | Record a shape marking a landmark. Area landmarks are not used to switch sections on and off. Available types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Generic • Pest • Obstacle |
| Non-Productive Area  | Record a shape marking a landmark. Non-productive area landmarks can be used to switch sections on and off. Available types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Generic (such as clover, exclusion, grassed waterway, slough, waterway) |


| Button | Tap to... |
|--------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obstacle (hazard, hole, lagoon, pond, rocks, tree) • Pest (disease, weed) |

Landmark point creation (*Run* screen)

1. Select a vehicle, implement and field. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).
2. Tap    to enter the field.
3. Tap  .
4. Tap . The display places a marker at the vehicle's current location, based on the recording point.
5. To edit or rename landmarks you have already created, go to Field Manager. For instructions, see [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#).
6. To record a different type of landmark by default, or to change the point on the vehicle/implement used to indicate the location of the landmark, tap **Change landmark settings**. For instructions, see
7. To close the landmark buttons, tap  .








Landmark line creation (*Run* screen)

1. Select a vehicle, implement and field. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).
2. Tap    to enter the field.
3. Tap  .
4. Tap the line button .
5. Tap . The display draws a dashed line beginning at the vehicle's current location, based on the recording point.
6. Drive to the end of the line you want to record and then tap  again.
7. To discard a path that is being recorded but has not been saved, tap . The path recorded so far is not saved.
8. To start over, tap the button for the feature again.

9. To edit or rename landmarks you have already created, go to the Field Manager. For more information, see [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#).
10. To record a different type of landmark by default, or to change the point on the vehicle/implement used to indicate the location of the landmark, tap **Change landmark settings**. For more information, see .
11. To close the landmark buttons, tap .

Landmark area creation (*Run screen*)

Follow the steps below to create a productive or non-productive area. Non-productive areas can be used to switch sections off when you use section control.




1. Select a vehicle, implement and field. See [Select a field \(page 153\)](#).
2. Tap  to enter the field.
3. Tap .
4. Tap  or .
5. Tap the record button . The display places a marker at the vehicle's current location, based on the recording point.
6. Drive around the area you want to record and then tap the record button again.
7. To close the landmark controls, tap .
8. To discard the recorded path and close the controls, tap . The path recorded so far is not saved.
9. To start over, tap the button for the feature again.
10. To edit or rename landmarks you have already created, see [Landmark editing \(Field Manager\) \(page 238\)](#).
11. To record a different type of landmark by default, or to change the point on the vehicle/implement used to indicate the location of the landmark, see .

Landmark editing (Field Manager)

At the Field Manager, you can edit any landmarks you have created in the **Run** screen.

1. Open the [Field Manager \(page 51\)](#).
2. Tap **Landmarks**. The map and the Landmarks list show recorded landmark items including:
 - Points
 - Lines
 - Areas
 - Non-productive areas
3. To select a landmark, tap it on the map or in the list on the left-hand side of the screen.
4. Use the buttons on the right-hand side of the screen to edit the landmark.

Note – The display shows only the options that are suitable for the selected item.

| Tap... | To... |
|--|---|
| Name | Rename the selected item. |
| Category  | Change the classification of a point, line or area landmark. Options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Generic • Obstacle <p>Note – To identify a point more specifically, change the name of the point.</p> |
| Convert  | Tap to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change an area to a non-productive area. • Change a non-productive area to an area. |
| Delete  | Remove the selected landmark from the display. |

5. To exit Field Manager, tap .

Layers

The following map layers for coverage are recorded for each task:

- Coverage Overlap
- Speed
- Height
- GPS Quality
- Offline Distance
- Guidance Engaged
- Applied Rate


You can view and edit layers. See:

- [View coverage layers \(page 239\)](#)
- [Edit a coverage layer \(page 240\)](#)


View coverage layers

To view a layer of coverage during field operations:

1. Make sure you are logging coverage. You will see the coverage in the **Run** screen behind your implement if coverage logging is on.

To turn on coverage logging, tap . Or, if you already have automatic coverage logging when you engage, tap the engage button.

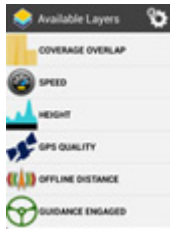
See [Mapping settings \(page 74\)](#) to set automatic coverage logging.

2. Tap .
3. The current layer being shown slides out to the right.



4. To change the type of layer, tap the current layer button (at the top). The list of Available Layers


displays.



5. Tap the layer you want to see on screen.

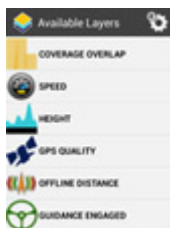
Edit a coverage layer


To edit a coverage layer:

1. Tap .
2. The current layer being shown slides out to the right.





3. Tap the current layer button (at the top). The list of Available Layers displays.



4. Tap  button. The edit panel for available layers displays.



5. Change the settings of the layer to better meet your needs:
 - Auto scale
 - Steps
 - Color scheme
6. Tap  to save your changes or  to cancel your changes.

Field-IQ system operations

For the Field-IQ system, the following equipment and tools may be used:

- [Field-IQ system Master Switch Box \(page 242\)](#)
- [Section control \(page 244\)](#)
- [Rate control adjustments \(page 245\)](#)
- [Boom height control operation \(page 248\)](#)
- [Boom height adjustments \(page 250\)](#)

Field-IQ system Master Switch Box



Note – All Field-IQ systems must have a Field-IQ master switch box.

| Item | Description | Tap here to ... |
|------|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 | Increase/decrease switch | Increases the applied amount by a set amount (the amount set when you add a material). See Add a material (page 196) . |
| 2 | Rate switch | Choose to use preset Rate 1, preset Rate 2, or Manual rate. |
| 3 | LED indicator | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Red: Unit is powered but not communicating with the display. • Green: Unit is powered and communicating with the display. • Yellow: Unit is initializing communications with the display. |
| 4 | Automatic/Manual section switch | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatic mode: The display automatically opens and closes sections when entering areas of overlap, non-apply zones, or crossing boundaries. • Manual mode: The sections are controlled manually, bypassing the display. |

| Item | Description | Tap here to ... |
|------|---------------|---|
| | | Note – You can switch from Automatic to Manual mode while traveling. |
| 5 | Master switch | <p>A: Jump start (top position) The sections and rate are ready to be commanded by the display, and the system is overridden to use a preset control speed (the speed is set in the implement setup). Use the jump start function if you lose a GNSS signal or you want to start applying before your implement is up to speed.</p> <p>B: On (middle position) The sections and rate are ready to be commanded by the display.</p> <p>C: Off (lower position) Sections are closed and rate is set to zero.</p> |

Field-IQ 12-section switch box



Only one section switch box can be used on each system. Each section switch is automatically assigned to the corresponding module. The modules are read from left to right. For example, switch 1 assigns to the module furthest on the left when standing behind the implement.

Relation to master switch box

The section switches have different functions, depending upon the status of the master Automatic/Manual section switch on the master switch box.

Automatic mode: When the Automatic/Manual section switch of the master switch box is in the automatic mode:

- If the section switch is in the on/up position the section(s) assigned to it are commanded automatically by the display.
- If the section switch is in the off/down position the section(s) assigned to it are commanded to be off.

Manual mode: When the Automatic/Manual section switch of the master switch box is in the manual mode:

- If the section switch is in the on/up position, the section(s) assigned to it are commanded to be on. This overrides the display and coverage logging is ignored.

- If the section switch is in the off/down position, the section(s) assigned to it are commanded to be off. This overrides the display and coverage logging is ignored.

LED status indicators

The LED has the following status indicators:




- Green: The unit is powered and is communicating with the display.
- Yellow: The unit is initializing communications with the display.
- Red: The unit is powered but not communicating with the display.

Section control

When you are spraying, you can view an on-screen representation (widget) of the output at the bottom of the **Run** screen. This indicates the sections you have turned on using a switch box.



Buttons and indicators


| Button or indicator | Explanation |
|---|---|
|  | Collapse the display of the widget. |
|  | Switch to the boom height widget, if applicable. |
|  | Shows spray section. Color indicates status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grey: Section was automatically shut off as a result of coverage overlap, existing a boundary or entering a non-productive area. • White: Section was shut off manually with the switch box. • Green: Section is on. • Yellow: Section is on but is not sending feedback to the system or is not meeting some requirements (such as a liquid channel not seeing adequate flow or speed).. |







| Button or indicator | Explanation |
|---------------------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Red: Section has a failure or warning. |

See also:

- [Field-IQ system Master Switch Box \(page 242\)](#)
- [Field-IQ diagnostics \(page 286\)](#)
- [Boom height control \(page 180\)](#)
- [Section control \(page 168\)](#)

Rate control adjustments

To adjust rate control while performing field activities, at the **Run** screen, tap . The rate control adjustment buttons display.

| Button/Indicator | Description |
|---|--|
|  | <p>Heading: Contains the name you assigned to the control channel. The background color of the heading indicates the state of the channel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Green: Channel is functioning. Field-IQ master switch is on. • Red: Channel is not functioning due to fault or failure. • Grey: Channel is shut off or disabled. Field-IQ master switch is off. <p>Actual: Indicates the actual rate being applied and the units. Target 1: Indicates the target rate and the units. Note – When you tap this widget, it displays more detail.</p> |
|  | Indicates the actual units (gallons or liters) being applied. |
|  | <p>Indicates the target number of units per acre. The bold indicator is the rate that is active.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Target for rate 1. • 2: Target for rate 2. • M: Manual target rate • Rx: Use a prescription (does not display unless a prescription is loaded) |
|  | Indicates the amount of flow through the system in gallons or liters per minute. |
|  | Tap this button to shut down the channel. If valve locking is enabled, tapping this button will shut the section and valve together. |
|  | <p>Visually indicates the amount of material remaining. Tap the refill tank button to launch the Refill Tank tool. Area to empty: The number of acres or hectares left before there is no more material to apply.</p> |
| Refill tank tool | Tap the appropriate button based on the amount you have refilled the tank. |

Also see:

- [Field-IQ system Master Switch Box \(page 242\)](#)
- [Field-IQ diagnostics \(page 286\)](#)[Rate control \(page 172\)](#)
- [Rate control \(page 172\)](#)
- [Virtual tank/bin \(page 176\)](#)
- [Prescriptions Manager \(page 56\)](#)
- [Prescriptions \(page 191\)](#)



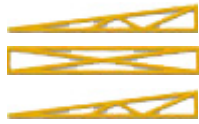

Boom height control operation





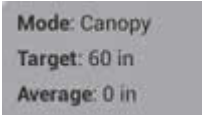
If you have boom height control set up, you can view, enable and engage sections of the boom. The boom height widget includes indicators and indicator/controls. The process of using the boom height control is:

1. Enable the boom section(s). This readies the section(s) to be engaged.
2. Engage the boom section(s). The boom height control is engaged.










Buttons and indicators

| Button/Indicator | Explanation |
|--|---|
|  | Tap to collapse the display of the widget. |
|  | Tap to switch to the rate control widget, if applicable. |
|  | Tap to select the section to engage or disengage. Color indicates state of system: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grey: The boom section cannot be enabled or engaged. Indicator only. • Red: System failure or warning/cannot enable or engage the boom section. Indicator only. • Yellow: The boom section is ready to engage. Indicator and button. Can be tapped to engage. • Green: The boom section is enabled and engaged. Indicator and button. Can be tapped to disengage and return the state to enabled. |
| Enable All | Tap to select all boom sections to enable or disable them. |
|  (red) | Red background: Indicator only. Cannot engage the boom(s) to adjust boom height of the enabled sections. |

| Button/Indicator | Explanation |
|--|---|
| Cannot Engage | |
|  (yellow) Ready to Engage | Yellow background: Ready to engage the boom(s) adjust the sections of the boom you have selected. Tap to engage the boom. |
|  (green) Engaged | Green background: Indicates the sections of the boom you have selected are engaged. Tap to disengage the boom. |
|  (gray) Disabled | Grey background: Indicator only. Boom(s) cannot be engaged because the boom system is disabled. |
| 26 IN  | Shows the number of inches the boom is above or below the target height using arrows and color: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One green arrow: Slightly above/below target height • Two yellow arrows: Somewhat above/below target height • Three red arrows: Significantly above/below target height |
|  | Shows the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mode • Target height • Average height of all boom sections |

Boom height adjustments


To adjust boom height while performing field activities, at the **Run** screen, tap . The boom height adjustment buttons display.

| Button/Indicator | Description |
|---|---|
| <p>Target Height</p>  | <p>Increase or decrease height of boom by using plus or minus signs. Or enter the value by tapping on the number</p> <p>Tap Set Target to Average to set the target height to an average.</p> |
| <p>System Aggressiveness</p>  | <p>Increase or decrease the aggressiveness of lowering or raising the boom by tapping the plus or minus signs. Or enter the value by tapping on the number and entering a different number.</p> |
| <p>Mode</p>  | <p>Tap either Ground or Canopy to change the mode.</p> |
|  | <p>Tap to see more detail on boom height control.</p> |
| <p>Boom Height Controls</p>  | <p>Sensors: Indicates all sensors and their status (enabled, disabled). (Display only)</p> <p>Valve Command: Indicates the percentage of command used for each valve. Should a boom section fail, begin troubleshooting here.</p> |
|  | <p>Tap to return to main boom height adjustment controls.</p> |

Also see:

- [Boom height control setup \(page 180\)](#)
- [Boom Height Diagnostics \(page 274\)](#)

Prescriptions

At the **Run** screen, tap  to open the Prescriptions Manager. You can use the Prescriptions Manager to assign a prescription to a channel.

Also see:






- [Prescriptions Manager \(page 56\)](#)
- [Importing prescriptions \(page 191\)](#)
- [Exporting prescriptions \(page 191\)](#)
- [Assign a prescription \(page 252\)](#)
- [Use a prescription \(page 253\)](#)





Assign a prescription

Before you can assign a prescription, you must:

- Have a field selected
- Have a channel set up

To assign a prescription:

1. Make sure you have a field selected.
2. At the **Run** screen, tap . The Prescriptions Manager displays.
3. In the Enabled Channels list on the left, tap the channel you want to assign the prescription to.
4. On the right, tap Prescription File Name. The Precision-IQ field application displays a list of prescription files that are available for the field you selected.
5. Tap the prescription file you want and tap .
6. Tap **Next**.
7. Tap Column Name. The list of column names displays.
8. Tap the column you want to use, then tap .
9. Tap Column Units, then tap either gal/a or L/ha. Tap .
10. Tap **Next**.
11. Optionally, tap Lead Time and enter the number of seconds (0 - 10). Tap .

12. Tap **When outside Prescription** and tap one of the following: **Close**, **Last Rate** or **Default Rate**. Tap .
13. Tap **Default Rate** and enter the rate. Tap .
14. If you have completed the information, tap **Finish**.
15. If you need to change previous information, tap **Back**.
16. To save your entries, tap .
17. To discard your entries, tap .

Also see:

[Prescriptions Manager \(page 56\)](#)

[Importing prescriptions \(page 191\)](#)

[Exporting prescriptions \(page 191\)](#)




[Use a prescription \(page 253\)](#)

Use a prescription

Before you can use a prescription, you must:

- Have a field selected
- Assign the prescription to a channel

To use a prescription, complete the following steps.

1. Make sure you have a field selected.
2. At the **Run** screen, tap . The rate control adjustment buttons display.
3. To begin using the prescription, tap . The other (buttons?) will become gray and cannot be tapped unless you stop using the prescription.
4. To stop using the prescription, tap .

Also see:

- [Prescriptions Manager \(page 56\)](#)
- [Importing prescriptions \(page 191\)](#)
- [Exporting prescriptions \(page 191\)](#)
- [Assign a prescription \(page 252\)](#)

ISOBUS

To control ISO-certified implements, you can use:

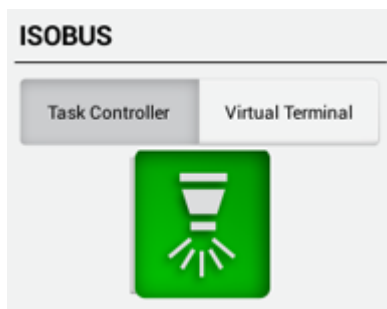
- Task Controller: An optional feature that enables the Precision-IQ field application to control the implement and log data. See [Task Controller operation \(page 255\)](#).
- Virtual Terminal: A means of controlling the implement through the Virtual Terminal. No data is logged. See [Virtual Terminal operation \(page 257\)](#).

Task Controller operation


Note – To use Task Controller, you must have unlocked the feature with a valid password, turned on the feature in the display settings, and be connected to an ISO-certified implement that is set up. See [Feature unlocks \(page 73\)](#) and [ISOBUS settings \(page 78\)](#).

At the **Run** screen, the ISOBUS widget displays when the following steps are completed:



1. Task Controller is turned on in the display settings. See [ISOBUS settings \(page 78\)](#).
2. The ISO-certified implement is connected and you have set it up with an application channel that is controlled by Task Controller. See [ISOBUS for implements \(page 161\)](#).

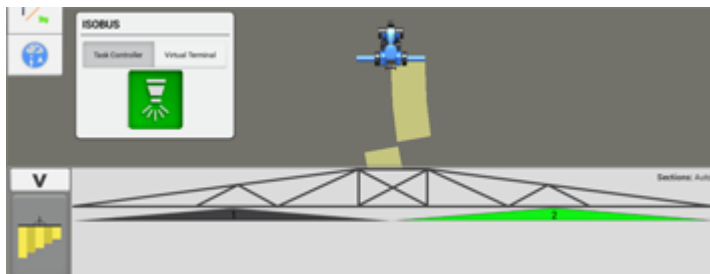





You can use the ISOBUS widget to switch between using Task Controller and Virtual Terminal.


- When you tap **Task Controller**:
 - The Precision-IQ field application can receive Task Controller information from the implement's ECU. This enables you to control the implement's operation with the Precision-IQ field application.
 - You can use the Rate Control and Section Control feature on the Precision-IQ field application. See [Field-IQ system operations \(page 242\)](#).
 -  acts as an on-screen master switch button.
- When you tap **Virtual Terminal**, Task Controller signals are not sent to the Precision-IQ field application. To access Virtual Terminal, access the Virtual Terminal window. See [Virtual Terminal operation \(page 257\)](#).

On-screen Task Controller switch

To begin operation with Task Controller, tap  (yellow). The button changes to  (green), indicating the Precision-IQ field application is controlling the application.



| Button status | Explanation |
|--|---|
|  (Gray) | <p>The Precision-IQ field application is not able to start application control with the Task Controller because of an issue with the setup. You cannot tap this button. It is a status indicator only.</p> <p>To troubleshoot, verify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Task Controller is on in the display settings See ISOBUS settings (page 78). • The implement setup includes the correct ECU which has been assigned to the channel. See ISOBUS for implements (page 161). • The implement is selected. See Select an implement (page 159). • Task Controller is selected in the ISOBUS widget. |
|  (Red) | <p>The Precision-IQ field application is not able to begin operation with the Task Controller. You cannot tap this button. It is a status indicator only. To troubleshoot:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the physical connections from the implement to the display. • Check that all settings are correct in the Virtual Terminal of the implement, including an "on" or "stand by command." (For more information, see the <i>Getting Started Guide for ISO for the Precision-IQ field application</i>.) <p>Note – If you have a master switch box or joystick and its master switch is off, no application will occur. To use Task Controller with one of these, make sure the physical master switch or stand by command is on.</p> |
|  | <p>The connection is secure and the Precision-IQ field application can receive information for Task Controller.</p> <p>Tap the button to use the Task Controller and have the Precision-IQ field</p> |

| Button status | Explanation |
|--|---|
| (Yellow) | application control the application. |
|  (Green) | <p>Indicates the Precision-IQ field application is currently controlling the application. If you have Field-IQ Section Control for spraying, this feature will control the application of the material. See Field-IQ system operations (page 242).</p> <p>Tap to stop using the Task Controller and stop the Precision-IQ field application from controlling the application.</p> <p>Note – Currently, the Prescriptions feature is not available for use with Task Controller.</p> <p>The task data recorded will be the same as if you were using Field-IQ to control the application. See Tasks (page 206).</p> |

Virtual Terminal operation

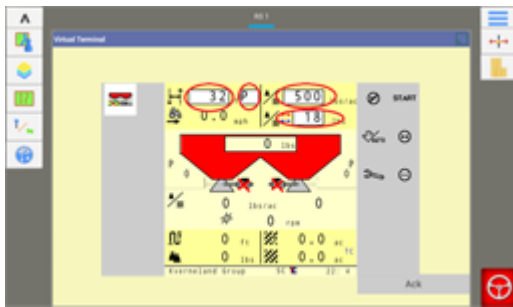
To use Virtual Terminal:

1. Make sure an ISO-certified implement is connected and that you have turned on the Virtual Terminal feature in settings. See [ISOBUS \(page 255\)](#).

At the **Run** screen on the ISOBUS widget, tap **VT**. The widget displays in a smaller version which only shows data and does not allow you to control the implement.



2. To increase the size of the minimized Virtual Terminal widget, touch the upper right corner of the widget and hold. Arrows display on all sides of the widget. Touch and drag an arrow to increase the widget's size.
3. Tap the upper right corner of the Virtual Terminal widget to maximize it. The Virtual Terminal expands to full screen.




At the full-screen view, you can control the implement using Virtual Terminal.

4. To minimize Virtual Terminal to only show data, tap the upper right corner.

Delete previous data

Data loaded from previously used ECUs will take up storage space. To remove this data from the Precision-IQ field application:

1. At the maximized Virtual Terminal, tap .
2. Tap **Delete**.
3. All previous data is removed.

On-screen widgets

Widgets are software gadgets on the screen that can provide functionality control, information and status on the **Run** screen during field activities.

There are two types of widgets:


- Status widgets: Provide information only and do not control any function
- Control widgets: Enable you to control a function, and may include status information

For some widgets, you can choose to display or not display them.

Other widgets display when you are performing a specific task, such as operating with the Task Controller. See [Task Controller operation \(page 255\)](#).

Access widgets

To access the list of widgets available on your Precision-IQ field application:

1. At the **Run** screen, tap .
2. To display all widgets, tap **Add All Widgets**.
3. To remove all widgets, tap **Remove All Widgets**.

Minimize/maximize, resize

Some widgets can be maximized from their normal minimized size. To maximize a widget, tap the upper right corner of the widget. To make it smaller, tap the same upper right corner.

Other widgets can be re-sized to a customized size. To make a widget larger, touch the upper right corner of the widget and hold. Arrows display on all sides of the widget. Touch and drag one of the arrows to resize. When you are satisfied with the size, remove your finger. The following widgets can be re-sized:

- [Position status \(page 261\)](#): On-screen lightbar, compass, digital compass and swath number
- [Speed status \(page 263\)](#)
- [Virtual Terminal widget \(page 263\)](#)

Move a widget

You can position some widgets on the screen where it makes sense for you. The position on the screen where you have chosen to display each widget is saved and associated with your user profile. That way, the next time you use the display, the widgets are where you previously placed them.

To move a status widget around on the screen:

1. Touch the widget and keep your finger on the screen.
2. Drag the widget with your finger. A grid displays on the screen.
3. After you have moved the widget where you want it, remove your finger.

Remove a widget

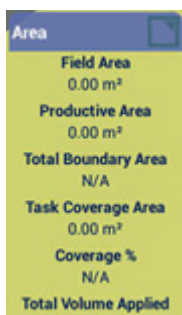
To remove a widget from the **Run** screen:

1. Touch the widget and keep your finger on the screen. A grid displays on the screen.
2. Drag the widget with your finger to the upper right corner. A trash can icon with the word "Remove" will display.



3. Drag the widget onto the trash can. You will no longer see the widget on the screen.

Area status

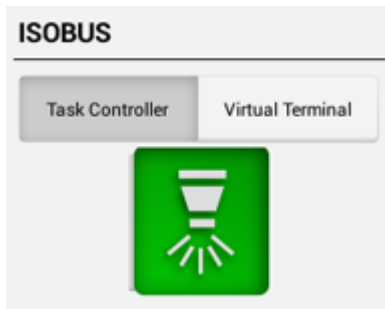


| |
|----------------------|
| Area |
| Field Area |
| 0.00 m² |
| Productive Area |
| 0.00 m² |
| Total Boundary Area |
| N/A |
| Task Coverage Area |
| 0.00 m² |
| Coverage % |
| N/A |
| Total Volume Applied |





Area status:

- Area of the field
- Productive area: Total field area minus the unproductive areas
- Total boundary area: Total of the area within the active boundaries of the field
- Task coverage area: The amount of coverage in the field
- Percent of coverage: The amount of coverage over the productive area multiplied by 100
- Total volume applied

ISOBUS Task Controller widget



You can move this widget around on the screen.

| Button | Explanation |
|---|--|
| Task Controller | Switches to Task Controller. See Task Controller operation (page 255) . |
| Virtual Terminal | Switches off access to Task Controller. See Virtual Terminal operation (page 257) and Virtual Terminal widget (page 263) . |
|  (Gray) | The Precision-IQ field application is not able to start application control with the Task Controller because of an issue with the setup. |
|  (Red) | The Precision-IQ field application is not able to begin operation with the Task Controller. |
|  (Yellow) | The connection is secure and the Precision-IQ field application can receive information for Task Controller. |
|  (Green) | If you have Field-IQ Section Control for spraying, Task Controller will control the application of the material. See Field-IQ system operations (page 242) . |

Position status

The following status widgets on the **Run** screen indicate your position.

On-screen lightbar for auto guidance

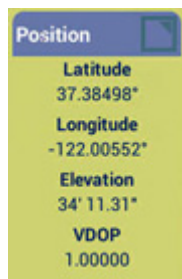


The on-screen lightbar provides the status of where the vehicle is in relation to the guidance line. When the vehicle is perfectly on the guidance line, the value in the center is 0 and the background color is green.

The center of the lightbar represents your position. As your vehicle's position moves farther from the line, the farther the highlighted arrows will be from the center of the light bar.

As the vehicle moves farther from the guidance line, the numerical indicator shows the distance from the guidance line and the highlight color changes from green, to yellow, to red.

Position



Your current position's:

- Latitude
- Longitude
- Elevation
- VDOP

Compass



The direction in which you are traveling.

Digital compass

A yellow rectangular widget with the text "28.5°" in black.

The degrees of the angle you are traveling.

Swath number

A yellow rectangular widget with the text "Swath 0" in black.

The number of the swath guidance line you are currently following.

Speed status

A yellow rectangular widget with the text "0.0 mph" in black.

The speed status widget indicates the speed at which you are traveling.

Virtual Terminal widget

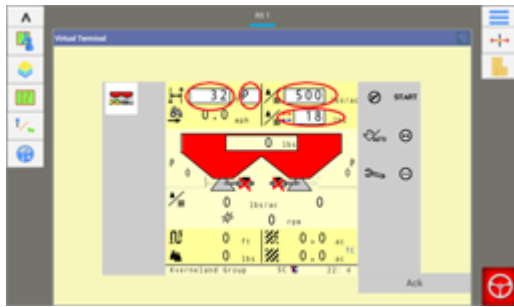
When using Virtual Terminal, initially the minimized version displays on the **Run** screen.



You can move this widget around on the screen.

To increase the size of the minimized VT widget, touch the upper right corner of the widget and hold. Arrows display on all sides of the widget. Touch and drag an arrow to increase the widget's size.

At the full-screen view of Virtual Terminal, you can control the implement using Virtual Terminal.



Alerts and warnings

The Precision-IQ field application will display warnings and alerts, depending on your features and the situation. For example, warnings and alerts will display regarding:

- Loss of GNSS coverage
- Using auto guidance and:
 - The vehicle is approaching a tight turns or the end of a row
 - The system detects the steering wheel is being used
- A lack of interaction with the display after a specific amount of time

This list is not comprehensive, rather a few examples of alerts and warnings.

End of row warning

If your Autopilot system is on and following a guidance line, when you begin approaching the end of a row, an End of Row warning displays.



Also see [Steering and guidance settings \(page 76\)](#).

Tight turn warning

If you are using an auto guidance system, when you are approaching a tight turn, the system displays a tight turn warning.



To customize your settings for tight turn warnings (including the angle of the turn and how soon the warning displays before the turn), see [Patterns settings \(page 75\)](#).

Diagnostics / troubleshooting



In this chapter:

| | |
|---|------------|
| Diagnostics | 268 |
| Precision-IQ field application | 269 |
| Autopilot system diagnostics | 270 |
| Boom Height Diagnostics | 274 |
| DCM-300 modem status | 276 |
| EZ-Pilot system diagnostics | 277 |
| DCM-300 modem diagnostics | 280 |
| EZ-Steer system diagnostics | 282 |
| Field-IQ diagnostics | 286 |
| GNSS and xFill technology status | 290 |
| GNSS diagnostics | 292 |
| Office Sync Diagnostics | 297 |
| ISOBUS diagnostics | 298 |
| System diagnostics | 299 |
| TM-200 Module diagnostics | 300 |

This chapter covers information about the status of equipment and services, as well as troubleshooting and diagnostics information.

Diagnostics

You can access Diagnostics in either of the following ways:

- Tap  at the **Home** or **Run** screen. The main menu displays. Tap **Diagnostics**.
- Tap the right-hand side of the display bar. When the popup notification list displays, tap . The main menu displays. Tap **Diagnostics**.

Diagnostics has two sections:

- The left side menu lists products and services active on the display.
- The right side shows information about the item you selected on the menu.

Tap the menu items on the left-hand side of the screen to access the diagnostic sections you want to view.

Precision-IQ field application

This section describes some possible issues with the TMX-2050 display, possible causes, and how to solve them. Please read this section before you contact technical support.

The display does not turn on.

| Possible cause | Solution |
|---|--|
| External power is too low. | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The charge on the external power supply • The fuse if applicable If required, replace the battery. |
| Internal power is too low. | Check the charge on the internal batteries and replace if required. Ensure battery contacts are clean. |
| External power is not properly connected. | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • That all power connections are seated properly • For any broken or bent pins |
| There is a faulty external power cable. | Try a different cable. Check pin outs with a multimeter to ensure internal wiring is intact. |

The display is not responsive.

1. Hold down the power button for 20 seconds.
2. After the display has shut down, press the power button again to power on the display.

The map is not visible on the *Home* screen.

If your system has a DCM-300 modem and has no map on the **Home** screen, check for:

- Possible cable disconnection
- Weak signal bars. See [DCM-300 modem diagnostics \(page 280\)](#).
- All cables are connected securely
- The status of GNSS. See [GNSS notification button \(page 41\)](#) and [GNSS diagnostics \(page 292\)](#).

Autopilot system diagnostics


You can use diagnostics for AutoPilot to:

- View the degree of the steering angle being given by the navigation controller and the actual degree of angle.
- Calibrate:
 - Manual override sensitivity
 - Vehicle system aggressiveness
 - Line approach aggressiveness
 - Engage aggressiveness
 - Proportional steering gain (P gain)
 - Roll calibration
 - Make incremental adjustments to a pattern using the nudge increment tool
- View:
 - Vehicle roll and yaw
 - Navigation controller orientation
 - IMU parameters
 - Sensor settings
- Set the NavController to output NMEA messages.

Steering performance for Autopilot system

1. At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Performance** under Autopilot.
2. Tap **Steering**.



| Button/Control | Explanation |
|---|--|
| System Feedback, Angle Desired | The degree of the steering angle command being given by the navigation controller. |
| System Feedback, Angle Actual | The degree of the steering angle that is actually occurring. |
| Vehicle System Aggressiveness | How aggressively the vehicle responds to cross track error. |
| Line Approach Aggressiveness | Controls how fast the guidance system attempts to steer the vehicle onto the current guidance line. See Line acquisition (page 136) for more information on calibrating. |
| Engage Aggressiveness | Controls how aggressively the vehicle initially engages the automatic guidance system. See Engage aggressiveness (page 137) for more information on calibrating. |
| P Gain | Balances rapid steering response and stability. See Proportional steering gain (page 131) for more information on calibrating. Note – This setting is not available for certain vehicle types. |
| Nudge Increment | This function is for advanced users to test the systems response to cross track error. While driving the vehicle online, tap the left or right button to move the line. Observe the response of the guidance system and adjust as necessary. |
| Engage  | Use to engage the system in the diagnostics screen. For more information on the engage button, see Vehicle operation (page 210) . |

Sensor performance for Autopilot system

1. At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Performance** under Autopilot.
2. Tap **Sensors**.

| Button/Control | Explanation |
|-----------------------------|--|
| VEHICLE ORIENTATION | Graphically indicates the roll and yaw settings. The yaw value is the heading error for the system in reference to the heading of the guidance swath. |
| CONTROLLER ORIENTATION | Orientation of the controller as entered by the user. |
| MANUAL OVERRIDE SENSITIVITY | Sets the level the voltage must reach before the guidance system disengages. The voltage must also drop below that level before automated steering can be engaged again. You can calibrate this control here or at the Vehicle setup panel. For instructions, see Manual override sensitivity calibration (page 124) . |
| IMU PARAMETERS | The raw voltage reading from the accelerometer and gyroscopes in the navigation controller. |
| SENSORS | The raw voltage of all connected sensors. |

NMEA messages

Before you can setup NMEA output, you must turn on NMEA capability in settings. See [Steering and guidance settings \(page 76\)](#).

To set the NavController to output NMEA messages:

1. At the Autopilot Diagnostics screen, tap **Performance** under Autopilot.
2. Tap the **Advanced** tab.
3. In the TAP SETTINGS section, tap in the TAP entry box.
4. Enter how often you want the NMEA message to be output by the NavController and tap **GET**. Enter the value in milliseconds. 1000 milliseconds equals 1 Hz.

| NMEA Message | Message Information |
|--------------------------|---|
| RawNMEAOutputIntervalGGA | Fix data including 3D location and accuracy data |
| RawNMEAOutputIntervalGSA | GPS dilution of precision (DOP) and active satellites |
| RawNMEAOutputIntervalGST | GPS pseudorange noise statistics |
| RawNMEAOutputIntervalVTG | Velocity made good |
| RawNMEAOutputIntervalZDA | Date and time |

5. To configure the baud rate:

- a. Enter “RawNMEAOutputBaudRate” in the TAP entry box, then tap **GET**.
- b. Enter the baud rate that is required by the external device.
- c. Tap **SET**.

Boom Height Diagnostics

At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Performance** under Boom Height.

Sensors

This information is display only.

| Item | Explanation |
|---------------|---|
| Status | The sensor's status: connected or disconnected |
| S/N | The serial number for the sensor. The display reads the serial numbers from the installed sensors. |
| Version | Firmware version of the sensor |
| Sensor Height | Current height of sensor |
| Side Offset | The distance from the center line of the sensor to the hinge point of the boom. (Does not apply to the center section.) |
| Nozzle Offset | The distance from the bottom edge of the sensor cone to the outlet of the spray nozzle tip. |

Boom Status

Valve Module

This information is display only.

| Item | Explanation |
|---------|-------------------------------|
| Module | Type of module |
| Status | Connected, disconnected |
| S/N | Serial number of valve module |
| Version | Version of firmware |

Boom Control Status

This information is display only.

| Item | Explanation |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| Control | Left, right or center |
| Valve Command | Normal, inverted |
| Output | The output command to the actuator |
| Positive Dead Band | Value obtained by calibration |
| Negative Dead Band | Value obtained by calibration |
| Positive Slope | Value obtained by calibration |
| Negative Slope | Value obtained by calibration |

Manual Control

For information on manual control, see [Boom height manual control test \(page 185\)](#).

DCM-300 modem status

The LED lights on the DCM-300 modem indicate the status of specific signals.



| Light status | Green LED indicates: | Amber LED indicates: |
|--|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Solid | Power on and booting | Cellular link |
| Fast blinking (200 milliseconds on/off) | Poor or no GPS signal | Poor or no wireless signal |
| Blinking (one second on/off) | GPS signal | Wi-Fi link |
| Slow blinking (three seconds on/off) | N/A | Wi-Fi and cellular link |

Also see:

- [DCM-300 modem diagnostics \(page 280\)](#)
- *TMX-2050 display Cabling Guide*
- [DCM-300 modem status \(page 276\)](#)

EZ-Pilot system diagnostics

You can use EZ-Pilot diagnostics to:


- Adjust:
 - Vehicle system aggressiveness
 - Line approach aggressiveness
 - Angle per turn
 - Free play offset
 - Manual override sensitivity
- View:
 - Vehicle roll and pitch
 - Navigation controller orientation
 - IMU parameters
 - Sensor settings

Steering performance for EZ-Pilot system

1. At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Performance** under EZ-Pilot.
2. Tap **Steering**.



| Button/Control | Explanation |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Vehicle System Aggressiveness | How aggressively the vehicle responds to cross track error while operating on the guidance line. See Online aggressiveness calibration for EZ-Pilot system (page 142) for more information on calibrating. |
| Line Approach Aggressiveness | Controls how fast the guidance system attempts to steer the vehicle onto the current guidance line. See Line acquisition |

| Button/Control | Explanation |
|---|--|
| | calibration for EZ-Pilot system (page 143) for more information on calibrating. |
| Free Play Offset | Used for adjusting the steering if the vehicle has greater free play offset steering in one direction than the other. It is to be used when the system constantly drives offset to the line and does not correct to "0" due to large tolerances(slop) in the steering components of the vehicle. Default= 0.0 inches (range=0-11.9 inches to the right or left). |
| MANUAL OVERRIDE SENSITIVITY | Sets the level of resistance on the steering wheel before the system will disengage. |
| Nudge Increment | This function is for advanced users to test the systems response to cross track error. While driving the vehicle online, press the left or right button to move the line. Observe the response of the guidance system and adjust as necessary. |
| Engage  | Use to engage the system in the diagnostics screen. For more information on the engage button, see Vehicle operation (page 210) . |

Sensor performance for EZ-Pilot system

1. At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Performance** under EZ-Pilot.
2. Tap **Sensors**.



| Button/Control | Explanation |
|------------------------|---|
| VEHICLE ORIENTATION | Graphically indicates the roll and yaw settings. |
| CONTROLLER ORIENTATION | Orientation of the controller as entered by the user. |
| EXTERNAL SWITCH | Setting and state of the external switch. |

DCM-300 modem diagnostics

At the Diagnostics panel, tap **DCM-300** under Connectivity.

The Network diagnostics information notifies you of the status of the network, device, cellular network and Wi-Fi network.

Network Status

| Item | Explanation |
|----------|--|
| Modem | Connecting, Connected, Disconnected |
| Cellular | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Network Name: The name of the network you are connected to• Signal Strength: Strength of signal to DCM-300 modem• Roaming Status: Whether you are roaming or not. Yes, No. |
| Internet | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Status: Disconnected, Connected• CF.com: Off, On (Connected Farm status) |

Device Info

| Item | Explanation |
|------------------|---|
| Serial # | Serial number of DCM-300 modem |
| Firmware version | Firmware version of DCM-300 modem |
| IMEI | Equipment number of mobile device (International Mobile Station Equipment Identity) |
| SIM ICCID | Subscriber Identity Module, Integrated Circuit Card Identifier |
| WiFi Mac Address | Hardware address of DCM-300 modem |

Cellular

| Item | Explanation |
|------------|---------------------------|
| Modem Type | GSM, CDMA |
| Sim Status | |
| Speed | Speed of cellular network |

WiFi Network

| Item | Explanation |
|----------|--------------------|
| SSID | ID of WiFi network |
| Speed | Speed of signal |
| Signal | Strength of signal |
| Channel | Channel of network |
| Security | Type of security |

Also see:

- [Modem services settings \(page 78\)](#)
- [GNSS receiver settings \(page 84\)](#)
- [Connected Farm Dashboard \(page 57\)](#)

EZ-Steer system diagnostics

You can use EZ-Steer diagnostics to:


- Adjust:
 - Manual override sensitivity
 - Vehicle system aggressiveness
 - Line approach aggressiveness
 - Angle per turn
 - Free play offset
- View:
 - Vehicle roll and yaw
 - Navigation controller orientation
 - Sensor settings

Steering performance for EZ-Steer system

To access:

1. At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Performance** under EZ-Steer.
2. Tap **Steering**.

| Button/Control | Explanation |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Vehicle System Aggressiveness | How aggressively the system responds to cross track error while engaged on the guidance line. |
| Line Approach Aggressiveness | Controls how fast the guidance system attempts to steer the vehicle onto the current guidance line. |
| Free Play Offset | Used for adjusting the steering if the vehicle has greater free play offset steering in one direction than the other. It is to be used when the system constantly drives offset to the line and does not correct to "0" due to large tolerances(slop) in the steering components of the vehicle. Default= 0.0 inches (Range=0-11.9 inches to the Right or Left) |
| MANUAL OVERRIDE SENSITIVITY | Sets the level of resistance on the steering wheel before the system will disengage. |

| Button/Control | Explanation |
|---|--|
| Nudge Increment | This function is for advanced users to test the systems response to cross track error. While driving the vehicle online, press the left or right button to move the line. Observe the response of the guidance system and adjust as necessary. |
| Engage  | Use to engage the system in the diagnostics screen. For more information on the engage button, see Vehicle operation (page 210) . |

Messages and fault codes

The following are warning messages that display when the EZ-Steer system becomes disengaged or there are system faults.

Disengaged warning messages

| DISENGAGED!... | EZ-Steer system... |
|------------------|--|
| Too fast | Disengaged because the vehicle is traveling above the maximum speed. |
| Too slow | Disengaged because the vehicle is traveling below the minimum speed. |
| Too far offline | Disengaged because the vehicle has gone offline beyond the Disengage Offline value. |
| Manual override | Was manually disengaged when the steering wheel was turned. |
| Manual disengage | Was manually disengaged when the engage button was tapped, or the external foot switch or remote switch was engaged. |
| No GPS | Disengaged because the GPS positions have been lost. |
| No Corrections | Disengaged because of old or no corrections. This occurs only if Low Accuracy Warning is set to High Accuracy Only. |
| Unexpected Error | Disengaged due to an unexpected error with the system. |

| DISENGAGED!... | EZ-Steer system... |
|-----------------------|---|
| Control fault | Disengaged due to a control fault. |
| Controller Comms Lost | Disengaged due to a poor cable connection or a damaged cable. |

System faults

| Fault code: | Possible cause | Solution |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| 01: Excessive manual override | Large number of manual overrides on one swath. | Decrease the Override Sensitivity value |
| 02: Hardware fault | General hardware fault | Check all equipment and cables for damage. |
| 03: Controller reset | Momentary loss of power, such as a power brownout. Controller reset unexpectedly. | Ensure no power cables are damaged and that the connectors are tight. Connect the power directly to the battery. Download the error log and send it to your local reseller. |
| 04: Communication error | Controller failed to receive CAN messages from the EZ-Guide Plus lightbar. | Ensure the cable connection is secure and not damaged. |
| 05: Bridge fault | Manual override sensitivity is too low. Controller is faulty. | Increase the override sensitivity value. Obtain a repair or replacement from your local EZ-Steer system reseller. |
| 07: Broken motor cable | Motor cable is broken. | Obtain a replacement cable from your local EZ-Steer system reseller. |
| 08: EEPROM fault | Memory error in the controller. | Contact your local reseller and request they download the error log. |
| 09: No motor connected | The motor or motor cable is not connected to the controller. | Ensure the motor cable is connected to the EZ-Steer system motor and the system controller. Ensure all cable connections are secure and not damaged. |
| 10: Unknown fault | Unknown fault in the system. | Contact your local reseller and request they download the error log. |
| 11: System fault | Lightbar failed to receive messages from the | Ensure none of the cables are damaged. Ensure all connectors are tight. |

| Fault code: | Possible cause | Solution |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| | controller. | |
| 12: Temperature too high | Controller temperature has exceeded the maximum internal operating temperature of 83 C (181F). | <p>Move the controller out of direct sunlight. Ensure the controller is well ventilated. Turn on the air conditioner and direct cool air to the controller.</p> <p>Note – The internal temperature of the controller should be only 12C (22F) warmer than the external temperature.</p> |
| 13: Over voltage | Power supply to the controller has exceeded 12.5 V. | <p>Ensure the EZ-Steer system is connected to a 12 V power supply.</p> <p>Note – If you jump start a vehicle with a flat battery, unplug the EZ-Steer system power plug first.</p> |
| 15: T2 Fault | The steering control module (SCM) is loaded with an incompatible version of firmware. | Check with your local reseller to obtain the latest version of firmware and update it. |
| | There are low voltage or intermittent problems with the system's power supply. | Check that there are no loose or corroded power connections, especially in the accessory plug area. |
| | There is a hardware fault in the EZ-Steer controller. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If necessary, modify the power cable with an in-line fuse and hardware to a reliable power connection. 2. Ensure the vehicle electrical system is in working order and supplies enough voltage to the system. 3. If the above solutions do not work, return the EZ-Steer controller to your local reseller for service. |

Field-IQ diagnostics

Operations

| Item | Explanation |
|-----------------|--|
| Master Switch | On or off |
| Control Mode | On or off |
| Arm Pump | Tap to enable Field-IQ to control the pump. |
| Speed | Speed you are currently traveling, or speed you have set for speed simulator |
| Speed Simulator | Enter a value to simulate traveling speed |
| Current Flow | Current flow rate of the channel |
| Actual Rate | Actual rate of flow |
| Virtual Tank | Tap to access the virtual tank tool |
| Target Rate | Indicates the target rate 1, target rate 2, and the manually set rate |
| Sensors | Name and pressure of sensor |
| Aggressiveness | Aggressiveness of the control valve |

Adjustments

| Item | Explanation |
|--------------------|--|
| Jump Start Speed | Adjust the jump start speed. When the Field-IQ system's Master switch is in the jump start position, the system applies material at the rate for this speed instead of the vehicle's current speed. This manual override option can be used to operate the system when the vehicle is stationary, or when GPS is unavailable. |
| Jump Start Timeout | Adjust start timeout. This setting limits the length of time you can run the jump start. Note – Auto-control resumes if Jump Start Speed is exceeded by ground Speed. |
| Shut Off Speed | Adjust shut off speed. The system shuts down if the implement drops below this speed. |

Rate Control

| Item | Explanation |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Minimum Override Speed | Change this setting. When the vehicle drops below this speed, the system maintains the application rate for this speed. This ensures consistent material flow at low speeds. |
| System Minimum Flow | Enter the minimum flow rate required by the drive, control valve or flow meter. This setting keeps the flow above the minimum operating level required by the equipment. |
| Manual Rate Switch Aggressiveness | <p>Increase or decrease aggressiveness of the manual rate switch. When the Rate switch is in the Manual position, this controls how quickly the valve opens/closes when you use the rate increment/decrement switch on the master switch box.</p> <p>Note – This setting does not affect automatic rate control.</p> |

Overlaps

| Item | Explanation |
|----------------------------|---|
| Start Overlap | The amount of overlap (distance) you want when starting coverage. When you are in a previously covered area driving toward a non-covered area, the system will begin turning sections on at this distance before reaching the non-covered area. |
| Stop Overlap | <p>The amount of overlap (distance) you want when stopping coverage.</p> <p>When you are applying material and driving toward a previously covered area, the system will keep sections on until they are this far into the previously covered area.</p> |
| Coverage Switching Overlap | The percentage of a section's width that must be in a previously covered area before the system switches the section off. The higher the number, the greater the overlapped area before the section is turned off. |
| Boundary Switching Overlap | The percentage of a section's width that must be past a boundary before the system switches the section off. The higher the number, the greater the overlapped area before the section is turned off. |

Latencies

| Item | Explanation |
|---------------------------|--|
| Apply Latency to Boundary | <p>Turn setting on or off by tapping. This setting applies to fields that have a boundary, and when you exit an exclusion zone and return to the workable area of the field.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On: The system uses on latency to begin applying material immediately when crossing a boundary. Off: The system starts when the boundary is reached and any mechanical delay could leave a gap between the boundary and where the product is applied. When GPS accuracy is low, this is the preferred selection. |
| On Latency | The length of time (seconds) from when a section is turned on to when the system begins to apply material. |
| Sections Off When Stopped | <p>Turn setting on or off:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On: The sections shut down when the vehicle is stopped. Off: The sections remain open (turned on) when the vehicle is stopped. |
| Off Latency | The length of time (seconds) from when a section is turned off to when the system stops applying material. |

Hardware




| Item | Explanation |
|------------|---|
| Controller | Module type (such as master switchbox, section control module, and so on) |
| Module S/N | Serial number of module |
| Position | Position of module on channel |
| Version | Firmware version of Field IQ module |
| Status | Connected, disconnected |

Sensor

| Item | Explanation |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Channel Name: Material | Name of channel |
| Module S/N | Serial number of module |
| Sensor | Name of sensor |
| Feedback | Sensor information |

GNSS and xFill technology status

GNSS status is available on the [Status bar \(page 39\)](#) and the popup notification menu accessed by tapping the right side of the display bar.

| Notification Button | Indicates... |
|---|---|
|  Green | GNSS connection is converged (green). |
|  Yellow | GNSS connection is converging (yellow). |
|  Red | No GNSS connection is available (red). |

For more information on GNSS, see:

- [DCM-300 modem initial setup \(page 101\)](#)
- [GNSS receiver settings \(page 84\)](#)
- [GNSS diagnostics \(page 292\)](#)
- [DCM-300 modem diagnostics \(page 280\)](#)

xFill technology status

In the event of an RTK or VRS signal interruption, the display switches to xFill mode, and the xFill icon changes to a blue color.

When 5 minutes of xFill technology time remains (15 minutes have elapsed), the xFill icon changes to a red color and a warning appears on the display.

if you lose corrections from the satellite, you will go into DGPS corrections. Even if you regain exposure to the satellites, the xFill technology will not resume. Anytime xFill degrades to DGPS, the receiver must receive RTK corrections before xFill can be ready in the background again.




Additionally, if you lose any of your satellites during xFill, they will not be able to be used for the entire xFill duration of 20 minutes.

Safety feature

xFill technology estimates the drift in position. If the distance back to the original path is too large, xFill technology discontinues Fixed position, which disengages auto-steering. In this case, you can

manually steer until RTK corrections are available or switch your correction source to DGPS and engage on the lower accuracy correction source.

xFill technology status buttons

| Notification Button | Indicates... |
|--|---|
|  (blue) | xFill is on (blue). |
|  (white) | xFill is available (white). |
|  (red) | xFill has less than 5 minutes of corrections (red). |

For more information, see [xFill technology \(page 104\)](#).

GNSS diagnostics

At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Performance** under GNSS.



For information on GNSS settings, see [GNSS receiver settings \(page 84\)](#).



CAUTION – The GNSS antenna may experience interference if you operate the vehicle within 100 m (300 ft) of any power line, radar dish, or cell phone tower.

Solution Information

| Solution Information | Explanation |
|----------------------|---|
| Number of Satellites | Indicates number of satellites currently being used. |
| Correction Type | The correction service indicated at setup. |
| Correction Source | Modem, satellite / fast, satellite /SBAS, OmniStar HP/G2 |
| Correction Status | Fixed, Float or x-Fill |
| Position Quality | Tap to change. Favor accuracy, balance quality or favor availability. |

Skyplot

At the Skyplot screen, you can view the number of satellites nearest to your position.



Troubleshooting

The GNSS positioning method influences the accuracy of the GNSS position reflected in your GNSS receiver. Additionally, the following conditions can affect GNSS accuracy.

| Condition | Explanation |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Atmospheric effects | GNSS signals are degraded as they travel through the ionosphere. The error introduced is in the range of 10 meters. The error is removed by using a differential or RTK positioning method. |
| Number of satellites used | To calculate a 3D position (latitude and longitude, altitude, and time), four or more satellites must be visible. To calculate a 2D position (latitude and longitude, and time), three or more satellites must be visible. For RTK positioning, five satellites are needed for initialization. Once initialized, four or more satellites provide RTK positions. The number of visible satellites constantly changes and is typically in the range 5 through 9. The receiver can track up to 44 satellites simultaneously. |
| Maximum PDOP | Position Dilution of Precision (PDOP) is a unitless, computed measurement of the geometry of satellites above the current location of the receiver. A low PDOP means that the positioning of satellites in the sky is good, and therefore good positional accuracy is obtained. |
| Signal-to-noise ratio | Signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) is a measure of the signal strength against electrical background noise. A high SNR gives better accuracy. SNR can be degraded by other electronic equipment operating nearby, including transmitters, cell phones, or data modems. It may also be degraded by solar flares and changing atmospheric conditions. |
| Minimum elevation | Satellites that are low on the horizon typically produce weak and noisy signals and are more difficult for the receiver to track. Satellites below the minimum elevation angle are not tracked. |
| Multipath environment | Multipath errors are caused when GNSS signals are reflected off nearby objects and reach the receiver by two or more different paths. |
| RTK Base station coordinate accuracy | For RTK positioning, it is important to know the base station coordinates accurately. Any error in the position of the base |

| Condition | Explanation |
|----------------------------|--|
| | <p>station affects the position of the rover; every 10 m of error in a base station coordinate can introduce up to 1 ppm scale error on every measured baseline. For example, an error of 10 m in the base station position produces an error of 10 mm over a 10 km baseline to the rover.</p> <p>For more information about how to make sure the position of your base station is accurate, refer to the manual for your base station receiver.</p> |
| Multiple RTK base stations | <p>If you are using several base stations to provide RTK corrections to a large site area, all base stations must be coordinated relative to one another. If they are not, the absolute positions at the rover will be in error.</p> <p>For more information about how to use several base stations to cover your site, contact your local Trimble Reseller.</p> |

Poor accuracy (multipath)

Poor accuracy can be due to GNSS signals reflecting off nearby trees and/or metal buildings and horizontal surfaces. (Reflection is also called multipath.)

To reduce multipath noise, mount the GNSS receiver so that it has a clear view of the sky. The receiver must be away from trees and large metal objects.

Intermittent loss of lock on satellite

- The receiver loses the satellite signal from time to time: Make sure that the receiver is mounted on the highest point of the vehicle and is clear of metal surfaces.
- Signal takes a long time to initialize
 - In RTK mode, longer baselines require longer initialization times. (The baseline is the distance between the base receiver and the rover receivers.)
 - Wait for the receiver to initialize or consider repositioning the base receiver to shorten the baseline. Make sure the rover receiver is in a clear area.

Loss of initialization

In RTK mode initialization can be lost when the rover receiver is close to trees or buildings and the number of satellites falls below four. Additionally, initialization may be lost if the receiver has not been tracking RTK corrections for some time.

- Move away from trees and obstructions to initialize. Once initialized, approach the obstructed area again. If the obstructions are severe, GNSS positioning may not work in that area.
- Because the GNSS satellites move, there may be times of the day when you are working in an area with obstructions.

Not tracking RTK corrections

The radio link is down or intermittent. Ensure that:

- The line-of-sight between the base and rover receivers is not obstructed.
- The rover receiver is within range of the radio.
- The radio power supply is on.

Poor signal / not receiving a clear signal

- Interference from 2-way radios

Transmitting FM 2-way radios can interfere with OmniSTAR, WAAS, and GNSS signal reception. Make sure that there is at least 1 m (3 ft) between the FM 2-way radio antenna and the receiver.

- Vehicle issues

An unshielded ignition system can cause enough noise to block reception of a differential signal. Use resistor spark plug wires on the vehicle ignition system.

An alternator can cause noise that interferes with a differential signal.

Note – Before replacing engine parts in an attempt to solve this problem, make sure that the problem is not caused by a computer or power source near the receiver. Some computers and their power sources cause noise that disrupts GNSS and satellite DGNSS signals.

Possible solutions include:

- Use bypass capacitors, commonly available in automotive stores for cleaning up interference to CB and other radios. If the problem persists, shield engine components with aluminum foil.
- Relocate the antenna on the machine. Determine the optimal antenna location.
- GNSS receiver issues:
 - Mounting location: The receiver may not be picking up a clear signal due to mounting location. Mount the receiver on the centerline of the vehicle, away from any sources of interference and with a clear view of the sky.
 - Cable problems: Use an ohmmeter to check the cable. The resistance of a good cable between connector pins at each end of the cable is zero. If the cable is sound, but the problem persists, try exchanging the cable with one that you know is working. If the cable

is defective, contact your local Trimble Reseller for an RMA number (if the Trimble product is still under warranty), or to purchase a replacement cable.

- **Battery:** A Lithium-ion battery in the receiver powers the internal real-time clock and so enables the receiver to get a first fix faster. The battery has a life of 7.5 years. When the battery fails, the internal clock cannot keep accurate time and the receiver may take longer to output GNSS positions. Please contact your local Trimble Reseller to get the batteries replaced. You cannot replace the battery yourself.

The receiver is not tracking any satellites.

| Possible cause | Solution |
|--|---|
| The GNSS antenna does not have clear line of sight to the sky. | Ensure the antenna has a clear line of sight. |
| The cable between the receiver and the GNSS antenna is damaged. | Replace the cable. |
| The cable connections at receiver or antenna are not tightly seated, or are connected incorrectly. | Check all cable connections. |

Office Sync Diagnostics

At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Office Sync** under Connectivity.

Office Sync wirelessly transfers files between the display and Connected Farm and the office. As files are created from field activities, Office Sync places these in an outbox. At the time you have specified for transfers to occur, Office Sync sends the files from the outbox in the display to the office.

At Office Sync diagnostics, the following information displays:

| Section | Explanation |
|---------------|--|
| Current State | <p>The state of sending or receiving files using Office Sync. Options include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disconnected: Display is not authorized for Office Sync • Authenticating: Display is checking for permission to use Office Sync • Ready for file transfer: Display is connected to the Internet and Office Sync is enabled • Checking for files: Display is checking for updates to be transferred • Receiving files (and percentage): Display is receiving files from the office. Percentage indicates the progress of the download. • Sending files (and percentage): Display is sending files to the office. Percentage indicates the progress of the send. |
| Outbox | A list of files waiting to be sent. |
| Sent | A list of files that have been transferred. |
| Received | The list of files that have been received from the office. |

Also see:

- [Modem services settings \(page 78\)](#)
- [Office Sync data transfer \(page 60\)](#)

ISOBUS diagnostics

At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Task Controller/Virtual Terminal** under ISOBUS.




Device tab

| Display Information | Explanation |
|---------------------|---|
| Device Name | Name of device |
| Device S/N | Device's serial number |
| Software Version | Version of ISO firmware |
| CAN Connection | Status of CAN connection |
| Pool Loaded | Yes or No. Indicates data from ECU is loaded. |
| ISO-TC | Task Controller data is available. |
| ISO-VT | Virtual Terminal data is available. |

Note – If ECU data does not auto-populate, it may be necessary to cycle power to the ECU.

Note – If the implement's ECU is power cycled while still in the Run screen, it is necessary to exit and re-enter the Run screen before being able to resume Task Controller.

Recording and saving CAN logs

1. At the Diagnostics panel under System, tap **Logging/CAN Logs**.
2. For the appropriate port, tap  to begin the recording.
3. Tap  again to stop recording.
4. Insert a USB drive into a USB socket of the Precision-IQ field application.
5. Tap  to transfer the logs to the USB drive.

System diagnostics

At system diagnostics, you can work with logs and view the system performance.

System performance

Performance lists devices and performance details for each product or service, including firmware versions.

At the Diagnostics panel, tap **Performance** under System.

Display

| Item | Explanation |
|----------|---|
| Internal | Capacity of internal memory |
| USB | Capacity of USB currently plugged into the USB socket |

Devices

| Item | Explanation |
|------------------|---------------------------------|
| Title | Title of the component |
| Firmware Version | Version of component's firmware |
| Hardware Version | Version of the component |
| Serial Number | Serial number of the component |

TM-200 Module diagnostics

The TM-200 Module has LED lights that shows the status of connections to it.

Note – Fast LED flash is approximately 3 flashes per second. Slow LED flash is approximately 1 flash per second.

LED 1

Indicates the status of the link and traffic between the TM-200 Module port marked with



and the DCM-300 modem.

LED 2

Indicates the status of the link and traffic between the TM-200 Module port and the display.

LED 3

For future use.

LED 3 and 4 combination

Blinking between red and green indicates the TM-200 Module is either starting up or loading new firmware.

LED 4

Orange fast flash = no position

| LED Indicator | Autonomous | SBAS | RangePoint RTX | OmniSTAR HP/G2 |
|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Orange solid | N/A | Autonomous, has SBAS signal | Autonomous/ DGPS, has RTX signal | Autonomous/ DGPS, has OmniSTAR signal |
| Orange slow flash | N/A | Autonomous, no SBAS signal | Autonomous/ DGPS, no RTX signal | Autonomous/ DGPS, no OmniSTAR signal |
| Green solid | Autonomous position | DGPS, has SBAS signal | Converged | Converged |

| LED Indicator | Autonomous | SBAS | RangePoint RTX | OmniSTAR HP/G2 |
|------------------|------------|--|-------------------------------------|--|
| Green slow flash | N/A | DGPS, no SBAS signal, using recent corrections | Unconverged | Unconverged |
| Green fast flash | N/A | Converged/unconverged, using old corrections | Subscription expired or other error | Converged/unconverged, using old corrections |

| LED Indicator | CenterPoint RTX (satellite) | CenterPoint RTX (modem) | CenterPoint VRS/RTK |
|-------------------|--|--|--|
| Orange solid | Autonomous/DGPS, has RTX signal | Autonomous/ DGPS, connected to RTX server | Autonomous/DGPS, no CMR or RTCM3 corrections |
| Orange slow flash | N/A | Autonomous, no SBAS signal | Autonomous/DGPS, no RTX signal |
| Green solid | Converged | Converged | Fixed |
| Green slow flash | Not converged | Not converged | Float |
| Green fast flash | Converged/unconverged, using old corrections | Converged/unconverged, using old corrections | Fixed/float, using old corrections |

Glossary

A -- B -- C -- D -- E -- F -- G -- H -- I -- L -- M -- N -- P -- R -- S -- T -- V -- W

A

A+ line

A guidance line you define on your field. The A+ line is defined fixing a point, then heading in a direction. Guidance lines are for use with automated steering.

AB line

A guidance line you define on your field. You set a beginning point (A) and an end point (B). You use guidance lines for use with automated steering.

Accelerometer

A device that measures non-gravitational acceleration.

Aggressiveness

The measure of how strongly the system makes steering changes.

Autonomous GNSS positioning

Autonomous GNSS positioning uses no corrections. The rover receiver calculates its position using only the GNSS signals it receives. This method does not have high absolute accuracy, but the relative accuracy is comparable to the other methods.

RTK GNSS positioning uses the RTK positioning method to achieve centimeter-level accuracy. To use the RTK method, you must first set up a base station. The base station uses a radio link to broadcast RTK corrections to one or more rover receivers.

B

Boundary

A line indicating the border surrounding a field.

C

CenterPoint™ RTK for radio

Positioning correction service for radio communication systems. Requires access to a base station located within a eight-mile radius (approximately) from your farm. An RTK base station sends corrections via a radio transmitter to a mobile receiver attached to your vehicle. Works well for farms within 8 miles of an established RTK base station or base station network, without line-of-sight obstructions such hilly terrain or an abundance of trees.

CenterPoint™ RTX™

Positioning correction service for satellite communication systems. Delivers GPS or GNSS enabled corrections via satellite directly to your receiver. Does not require a base station or cellular data plan. CenterPoint RTX corrections are provided on a subscription basis.

CenterPoint™ RTX™ for cellular

Positioning correction service for cellular communications. Delivers corrections via cellular network directly to your receiver. Requires a cellular data plan.

CenterPoint™ VRS™

Virtual reference station. Positioning correction service for cellular communication systems. Enables RTK (Real-Time Kinetic) corrections over a large geographic area where robust cellular data coverage is available. Provides high accuracy for guidance applications throughout the whole coverage area. Requires a cellular data plan. Uses a cellular communication modem, such as the DCM-300 or Ag3000. Relies on CORS.

Client

The customer for whom the work is being done.

Controller orientation

Correctly associate the outputs of the Autopilot controller sensors with the direction of the vehicle.

Correction service

A service which provides corrections to create a higher GPS accuracy.

CORS (Continuously Operating Reference Station) network

A network of GPS/GNSS reference stations situated within the coverage area to transmit RTK (Real-Time Kinetic) corrections to the cellular modem. The distance between the reference stations and the modem on the vehicle does not affect accuracy. CORS works well in areas with spotty RTK radio tower coverage.

Curved line

A guidance line you define on your field. You begin recording and drive until you are at the end of the curved line or segment, then stop recording. Guidance lines are for use with automated steering.

D

DGNSS

Differential GNSS positioning. The GNSS receiver uses corrections from WAAS/EGNOS satellites or from OmniSTAR HP, XP, G2, or VBS satellites. These differential systems use special algorithms to provide differential corrections that allow the rover receiver to calculate its position more accurately. Not all corrections services support the use of GLONASS satellites in their solution.

DGPS

Differentially corrected Global Positioning System (GPS).

E

EGNOS

European Geostationary Navigation Overlay Service. An [SBAS](#) operated by the European Space Agency.

Event

A precision agriculture activity on a particular field. For example: planting seed, applying fertilizer or lime, or spraying with fungicide, herbicide or insecticide.

F

Farm

A collection of fields.

Field

Settings created in the Precision-IQ field application to represent an actual field, one or more parts of an actual field, or a group of two or more fields. Field profiles include guidance lines for steering, pivot patterns and landmarks.

Freeplay

Movement in the steering linkage through which a movement of the steering wheel will cause no change in wheel angle.

Freeplay offset

A value entered to give the control system a way to account for freeplay during guidance.

G

GLONASS

A Russian space-based satellite navigation system.

GNSS

Global Navigation Satellite System. A system of GPS US and Russian satellites that provide information about geo-spatial positioning. A GNSS receiver can determine its longitude, latitude and altitude. In the future, GNSS will also use Chinese GPS satellites.

GPS

Global Positioning System. A space-based satellite navigation system. A GPS receiver can determine its position by using GPS satellites.

GPS autonomous positioning

A mode of operation in which a GPS receiver computes position fixes in real time from satellite data alone, without reference to data supplied by a base station. Autonomous positioning is the least precise positioning procedure a GPS receiver can perform, yielding position fixes that are precise to ± 100 meters.

H**HDOP**

The horizontal component of [PDOP](#).

Headland

A guidance pattern that contains straight lines within a boundary. Guidance patterns are for use with automated steering.

I**IMD**

Inertial Measurement Device.

IMEI

International Mobile Station Equipment Identity. A number to identify mobile equipment. The GSM network uses this number to identify valid devices. The IMEI number has no relationship to the subscriber.

IMU

Inertial Measurement Unit. An electronic device that measures and reports on a vehicle's velocity, orientation, and gravitational forces, using a combination of accelerometers and gyroscopes.

Integrated radio

Trimble integrated radios contain a radio antenna integrated with the GNSS receiver or display in a single unit. These integrated radios receive corrections transmitted by Trimble GNSS RTK base stations.

L

Logging

Also called coverage logging. Logging records the area that you have covered when you carry out an operation, for example applying fertilizer to a field.

License

A license enables a software feature, and is valid for an unlimited duration. A license does not need to be activated, but does need to be assigned to and delivered to a specific display. Assignment and delivery of a license occurs on the reseller portal.

M

Manual override

Required for platforms that employ a pressure transducer for the manual override function. Change the default only if the operation of the manual override function is unacceptable.

Material

A product that is controlled by a PWM valve, Servo valve, or Rawson™ drive. You can use a planter (seed), liquid, granular seed and granular fertilizer, all of which have different setup parameters.

Multipath error

An error caused by the interference of the same signal reaching the receiver by two different paths: once via the direct path, and once via a reflection. A major cause of GPS errors.

N

NMEA standard

An electrical, hardware and data standard designed by the National Marine Electronics Association that dictates the content and format of communication between GPS receivers and other devices. NMEA messages include data that provides location and accuracy, the number of satellites being used, the dilution of precision and signal strength.

P

PDOP

Position Dilution of Precision. A calculation that takes into account the satellites that can be seen, how high they are and their bearing. The outcome of the calculation is an estimation of how prone to error your GPS position is. The lower the value, the more accurate your position. You may wish to plan your field work for periods of low PDOP. Generally, the more satellites in view, the better (lower) the PDOP.

Pivot

A guidance pattern you define for your field by recording the outer circular boundary of the pivot area and then entering a value to compute the rows within the pivot. Guidance patterns are for use with automated steering.

R

RangePoint™ RTX™

Positioning service for satellite communication systems. RangePoint RTX works with a built-in GNSS receiver. Does not require a base station or cellular data plan.

Rate switch for Field IQ

Used to select Preset Rate 1, Preset Rate 2, or Manual Rate Control.

Real Time Kinematic (RTK)

A navigation technique to improve the information received from satellite-based positioning systems. Used with GPS, GLONASS and Galileo.

Roll correction

Compensates for antenna height and static roll caused by minor variations in the navigation controller and the mounting of the GPS receiver.

Run screen

The screen where you perform field activities.

S

SBAS

Space Based Augmentation System. A system of Earth-based systems at points surveyed for location accuracy that measure satellites, signals and factors that can impact the signals. The SBAS then broadcasts corrections to satellite signals to improve accuracy.

Scintillation

Causes extreme fluctuations in signals that are received. Scintillation can be caused by turbulence that creates air pockets with different temperatures and densities.

Section

A number of rows or spray nozzles that are controlled by existing shut-off valve, Tru Count air clutches, or Tru Count LiquiBlock™ valves. A section can have either a single row/nozzle or multiple rows/nozzles depending on how the system is set up.

Section Control Module

Controls 12 sections/rows per module with up to 4 modules (48 module sections / rows).

Service

A service is a subscription to an application that lasts for a specific amount of time, such as one or two years. You associate a service with a specific display that can be delivered wirelessly, through a QR code included in an email or through download to a computer.

Signal Input Module

The percentage of time an individual seed is placed for every intended drop.

Slew time

The amount of time that the front wheels take to move from the far left to the far right position and back.

Steering deadzone

The amount of pressure that the system must apply to the hydraulics before the wheels begin to turn.

T**TAP**

Tuning parameter for guidance algorithms.

V**VDOP**

A measurement of the vertical [PDOP](#).

Valve calibration for Field-IQ

The process for adjusting the valve performance parameters to get the best performance out of a valve.

W

WAAS

Wide Area Augmentation System. An [SBAS](#) operated by the US Federal Aviation Administration.

Wheelbase

The distance between the front and rear axles. On tracked vehicles, the wheelbase is exactly half the length of the track.